Owner's Manual
Saveiro

Vehicle data sticker

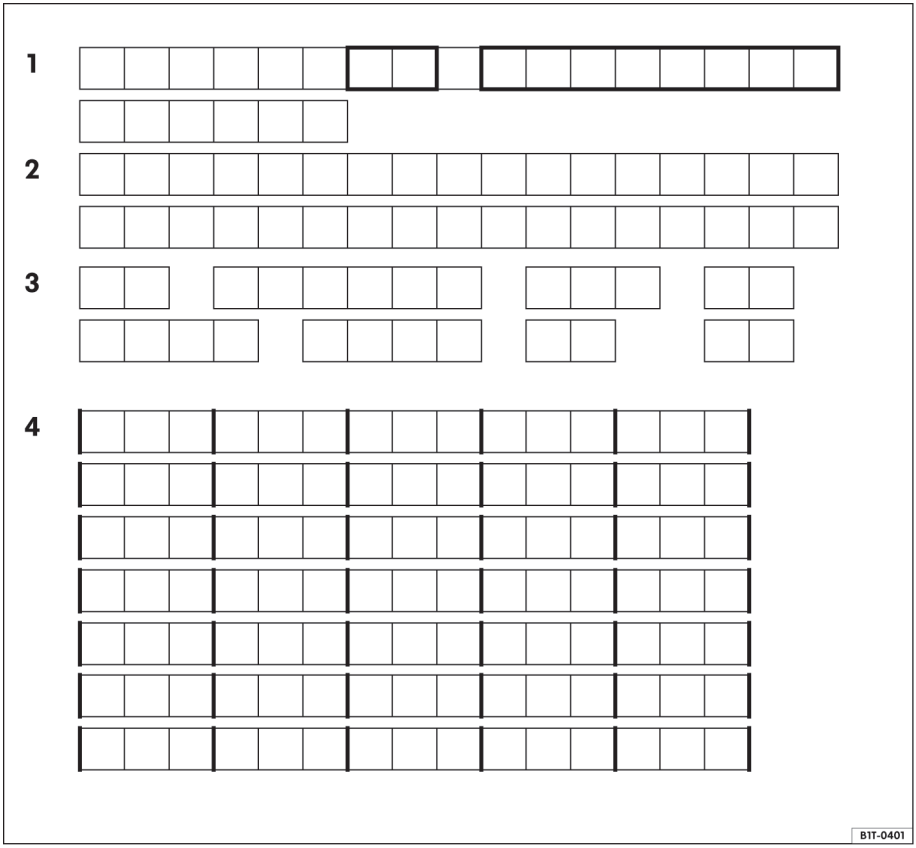


Fig. 1

① Vehicle identification number
② Model, engine power, transmission
③ Engine code letters, transmission code letters, paint code, internal equipment
④ Optional equipment, PR numbers

Delivery date:
Volkswagen Dealership stamp

Thank you for choosing Volkswagen

By purchasing this Volkswagen, you have become the owner of a vehicle fitted with the most up-to-date technology and a multitude of convenience functions for your use and enjoyment.

Before using your vehicle for the first time, carefully read and observe the information in this Owner's Manual to become familiar with your vehicle and all of its functions, in addition to learning about the potential dangers to yourself and others and how to avoid them.

If you have any further questions about your vehicle, or if you think that the manual set has not covered everything, please contact your local Volkswagen Dealership. Volkswagen Dealerships are always happy to deal with your questions, suggestions or issues.

We hope you have a great driving experience in your new vehicle. Happy motoring.

Volkswagen do Brasil

25C.5L1.SAV.20

Table of Contents

25C.5L1.SAV.20

About this Owner's Manual

This Owner's Manual is valid for all available models and versions of this vehicle. The Owner's Manual describes all of the equipment and models, without identifying as special equipment or model variations. Thus, there may be pieces of equipment described which are not included in your vehicle or which are only available to specific markets. The equipment contained in your vehicle is detailed in the product's sale documentation. Contact your local Volkswagen Dealership for further information.

All data in this Owner's Manual correspond to the information available at the time of going to print. Due to continuous technical improvement of the vehicle, actual vehicle features and equipment may differ from the indications provided in this manual. No discrepancy in data, illustrations or descriptions shall form the basis for any legal claim.

Please ensure that the complete manual set is always in the vehicle when lending or selling the vehicle.

- An alphabetical index is included at the end of this manual.
- A list of abbreviations detailing technical terms and acronyms can be found at the end of the manual.
- Directions and positions such as left, right, front and rear are normally relative to the vehicle's direction of travel, unless otherwise indicated.
- Illustrations assist with orientation and should be regarded as schematic representations.
- Short definitions highlighted before some of the sections in this manual, summarize the functions and use of a system or piece of equipment. Further information on the systems and equipment, apart from their features, commands and system limitations, is found in the respective sections.
- Any technical changes made to the vehicle after publication of this booklet are provided in a Supplement that is included with the manual set.

Standard booklets in the manual set:

- Owner's Manual
- Service records *(may not be available for some countries)*

Additional booklets in the manual set (optional):

- Supplement
- Radio manual ◁

Description of symbols

Refers to an excerpt within a chapter that contains important information and safety notes ⚠. Such reference must always be observed.

Indicates that the section is continued on the next page.

Indicates the end of a section.

Indicates situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.

®

The symbol indicates a registered trademark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

→⚠ →⚠ →⚠ Symbols of this type reference warnings within the same section or page, indicating potential risks of accidents and injuries, as well as how they can be avoided.

→ⓘ Cross reference to information about possible damage to your vehicle within the same section or on a given page.

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate extremely dangerous situations, which may lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which will lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations, which may lead to light or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations, which may lead to vehicle damages if you do not observe the warning.

Texts with this symbol are environment preservation recommendations.

Texts with this symbol contain additional information. ◁

25C.5L1.SAV.20

Overview of the vehicle

Front view

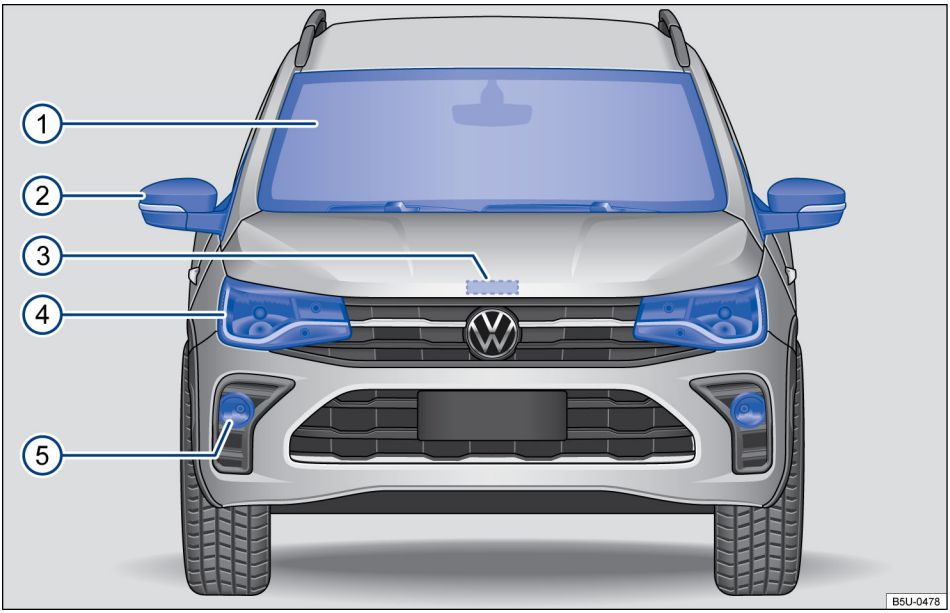


Fig. 2 Front view of the vehicle.

Key for→ Fig. 2:

Side view

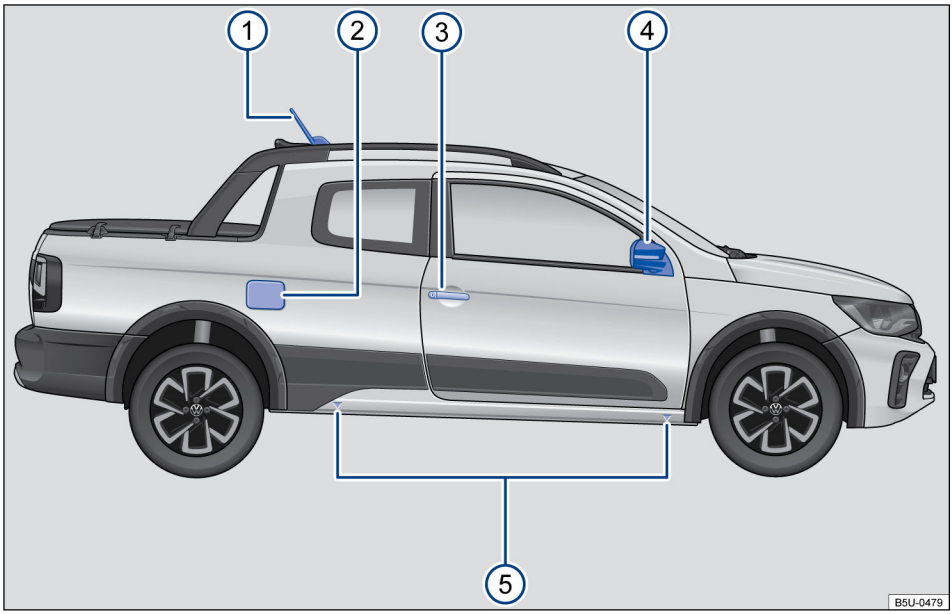


Fig. 3 Side view of the vehicle.

Key for→ Fig. 3:

Rear view

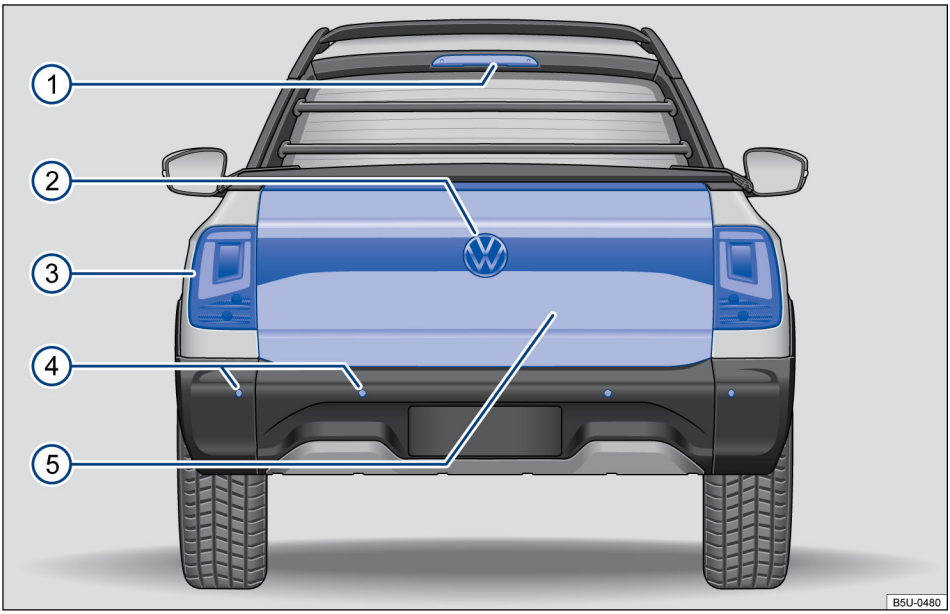


Fig. 4 Rear view of the vehicle.

Key for→ Fig. 4:

①	Elevated brake lights and luggage compartment lighting	140, 146
②	Volkswagen logo to open the dropside	52
③	Tail lights	140
④	Rear parking distance control sensors	97
⑤	Tailgate	52 ◁

Driver door

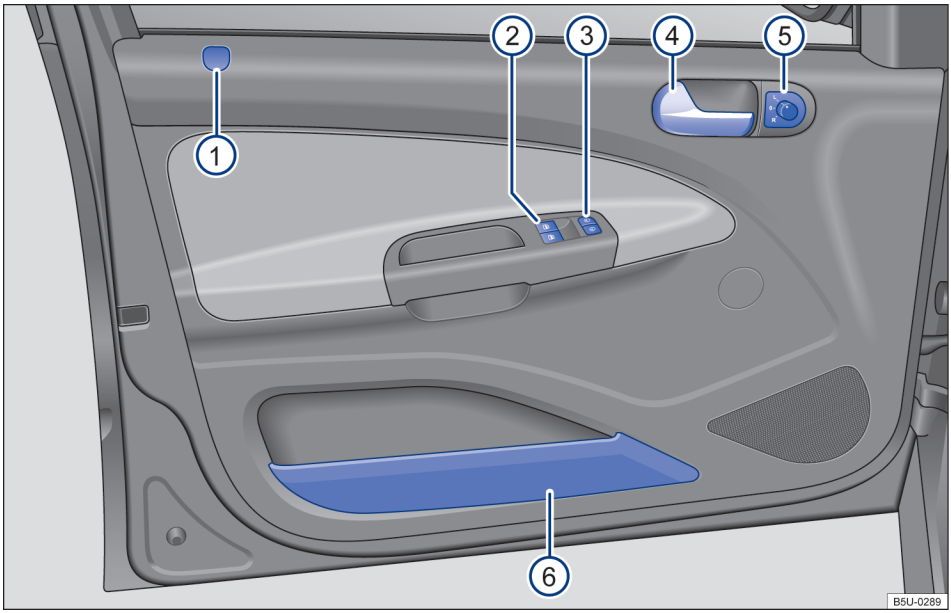


Fig. 5 Overview of the controls in the driver door.

Key for→ Fig. 5:

Driver's side

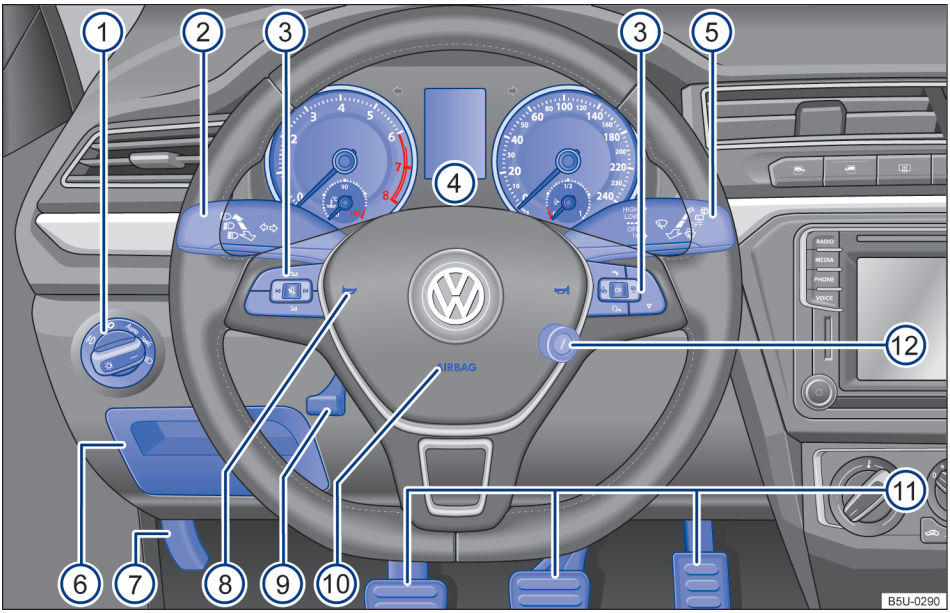


Fig. 6 Overview of the driver side.

Key for→ Fig. 6:

(4) Instrument cluster:
- Instruments ... 14
- Display ... 17
- Warning lamps and indicator lamps ... 13

(5) Lever for ... 69
- Windscreen wipers **HIGH** – **LOW**
- Interval wipe for the windscreen
- Single windscreen wiper movement **1**x
- Windscreen wipers
- Automatic windscreen washing and wiping system
- Controls of the Volkswagen information system **TRIP**- , **OK/RESET** ... 21

(6) Storage compartment and fuse box cover ... 106, 147

(7) Bonnet release lever ... 154

(8) Horn (works only when the ignition is switched on)

(9) Lever for adjusting the steering column ... 59

(10) Driver front airbag ... 34

(11) Pedals ... 80

(12) Ignition lock ... 86 ◁

Centre console

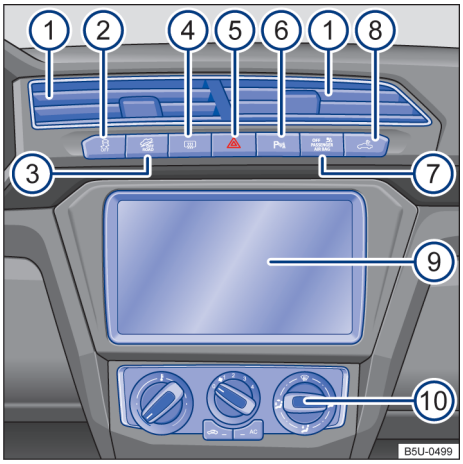


Fig. 7 Overview of the upper section of the centre console.

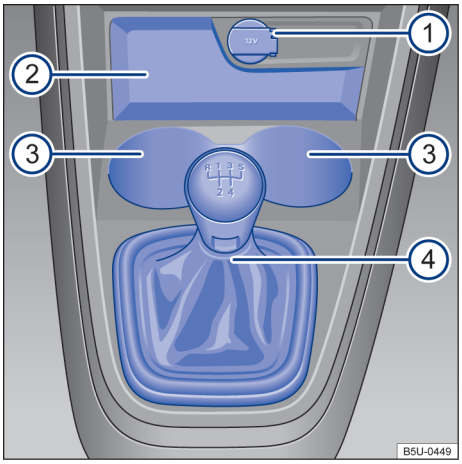


Fig. 8 Overview of the lower section of the centre console.

Key for→ Fig. 7:

(1) Air vent ... 74

(2) Electronic stability control (ESC) button ... 104

(3) Off-road feature on/off button ... 92

(4) Rear window heating button ... 74

(5) Hazard warning lights button ... 42 ▶

6 Parking distance control on/off button ... 97
7 Indicator light OFF PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light regarding front passenger airbag deactivation (not available in some versions) ... 34
8 Luggage compartment light button ... 68
9 Radio (if factory fitted) ... 113
10 Controls for:
– Heating and fresh air system ... 74
– Air conditioning system ... 74

Key for→ Fig. 8:
1 12-volt socket ... 109
2 Storage compartment ... 106
3 Drink holder in the centre console ... 108
4 Lever for:
– Manual gearbox ... 89 ◁

Front passenger side

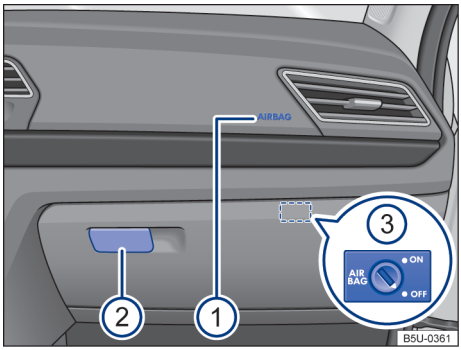


Fig. 9 Overview of the front passenger side.

Key for→ Fig. 9:
1 Location of front passenger front airbag in the dashboard ... 34
2 Opening lever for the stowage compartment ... 106
3 Switch activated by the vehicle key to switch the front passenger airbag off (not available in some versions) ... 34 ◁

Symbols in the roof headliner

Symbol	Definition
, , 0, ,	Interior and reading lights switches → page 67 ◁

Driver's information

Warning lamps and indicator lamps

Warning and indicator lamps indicate a number of warnings → ⚠, faults → ⓘ or other specific functions. Some warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should go out once the engine is running or the vehicle is in motion.

Depending on the version, additional text messages could appear in the display on the instrument cluster to provide further information or to ask you to perform certain tasks → page 14.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, symbols may be displayed in the instrument cluster instead of warning lamps.

Sound signals can also be heard when certain warning or indicator lamps light up.

Symbol	Meaning → ⚠
	Stop driving! Parking brake activated, low brake fluid level or damaged brake system. → page 95
	Lit: **Stop driving!** Coolant temperature too high or engine coolant level too low.
	Flashing: fault in engine coolant system. → page 162
	Stop driving! Engine oil pressure too low. → page 158
	Seatbelt not fastened by the driver. → page 26
	Fault in the alternator. → page 166
	Flashing: alarm activated. → page 50
	Lit: ESC faulty or malfunctioning. → page 101
	Flashing: ESC running. → page 101
OFF	Lit: ESC disabled by driver. → page 101
ABS	ABS faulty or not functioning. → page 101
	Fog light switched on. → page 63
	Fault in pollutant emission control system. → page 133
EPC	Fault in electronic engine output control. → page 133
	Fuel tank almost empty. → page 16
	Fault in front belt tensioner system or airbag. → page 34
	Tyre pressure to low or damaged tyre pressure control system. → page 171
	Cold start system heating. → page 166
	Left or right turn signal. → page 63
	Hazard warning lights switched on. → page 42
	Emergency brake activation lights. → page 42
	Cruise control system (GRA) on. → page 94
	Lit up: hill descent control system switched on. → page 93
	Flashing: hill descent control system operating. → page 93
	Main beam is switched on or the headlight flasher is being operated. → page 63
SAFE	Electronic immobilizer activated. → page 88
INSP	Service interval display. → page 20

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries. ▶

- Never ignore any warning lamps or text messages that appear.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
- Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and ensure that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel or oil, etc.
- Broken-down vehicles lacking due signalling increase the risk of accidents both for you and for other road users. Always switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- Before opening the engine compartment cover, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down sufficiently.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area and may cause severe injuries → page 154, *Safety guidelines for work in the engine compartment*.

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to vehicle damages. ◁

Instrument cluster

Introduction

After starting the engine with the vehicle's battery completely flat, or with a replacement battery in the vehicle, the system's configuration (time, date, comfort and programming configurations) may have been deleted or become corrupted. Check and adjust the settings after the vehicle battery has been sufficiently recharged.

WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Never operate the instrument cluster's buttons while the vehicle is in motion.
- To prevent the risk of accidents and injuries proceed with all the settings of the indicators of the instrument cluster's display and those of the radio system's display only when the vehicle is stopped. ◁

Analogue instrument cluster

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 14.

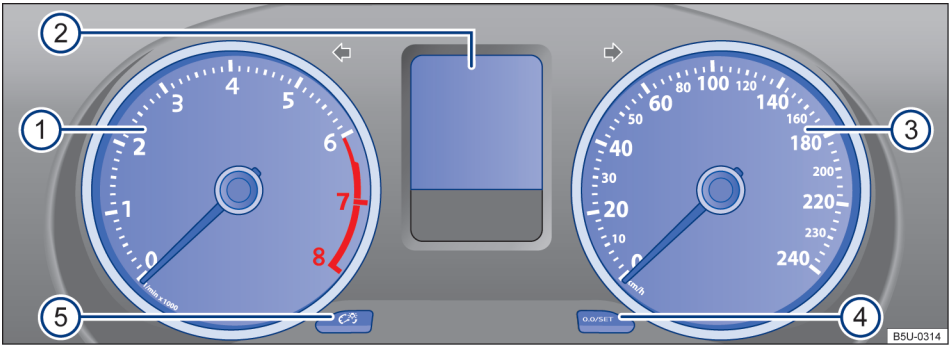


Fig. 10 Instrument cluster in the dashboard (variable 1). ▶

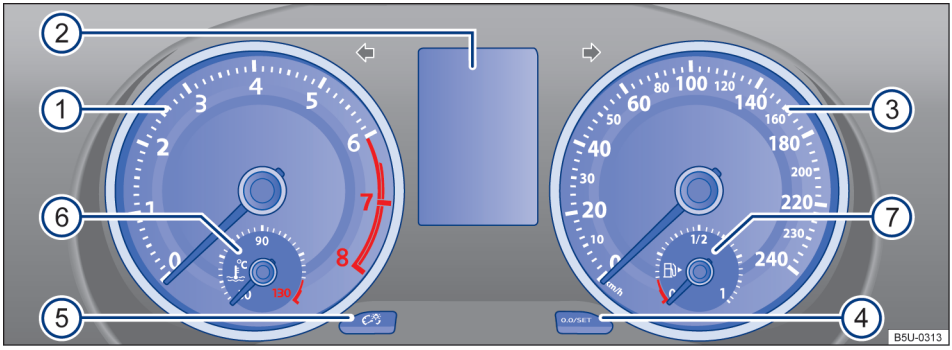


Fig. 11 Instrument cluster in the dashboard (variable 2).

Some of the controls and functions depicted are specific to certain models/versions or are optional.

Explanations about the → Fig. 10 and→ Fig. 11:

(1) **Rev. counter** (running engine speed in revolutions x 1,000 per minute).

(2) **Display indicators** → page 17.

(3) **Speedometer** (speed indicator).

(4) **Reset button** or to display the (trip) recorder.
- Press the button 0.0/SET *for approximately 2 seconds* to reset the trip recorder and other multi-function display indicators, if necessary → page 18.

(4) **Clock settings knob** 0.0/SET.

(4) **Service interval display reset button** → page 20.

(5) **Dashboard lighting adjustment button** → page 67

(6) **Engine coolant temperature display** (depending on the vehicle version) → page 16.

(7) **Fuel level display** (depending on the vehicle version) → page 16. ◁

Tachometer (Rev counter)

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 14.

The start of the red zone on the rev counter indicates the maximum engine speed of a run and warm engine for each selected gear. Change to the next higher gear, position the selector lever to **D** or **S**, or relieve the accelerator pedal before the needle reaches the red zone → ⓘ.

NOTICE

- While the engine is cool, avoid high rotations, total acceleration and increased engine load.
- To avoid engine damages, the rev. counter needle must not remain in the red area of the scale for more than a short period of time.

Switching to higher gears in advance helps save fuel and reduce operating noises. ◁

Fuel gauge

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 14.

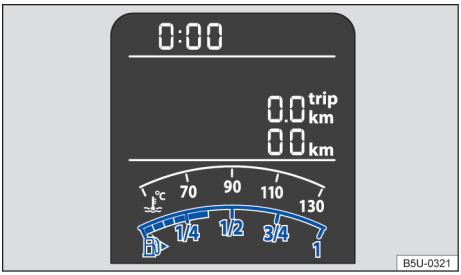


Fig. 12 On the instrument cluster display: fuel gauge (variable 1).

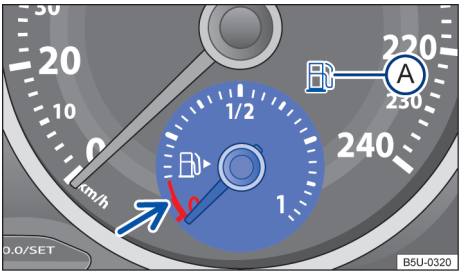


Fig. 13 On the instrument cluster: fuel gauge (variable 2).

When switching the ignition on, certain warning and indicator lamps flash to check functions. Such lamps go out after a few seconds.

The fuel gauge may vary depending on the vehicle model → Fig. 12 or → Fig. 13.

For vehicles with Volkswagen information system, the control light lights up in the instrument cluster display.

Fuel tank almost empty

The indicator light flashes for approximately 10 seconds, indicator position in the four small segments → Fig. 12. The reserve fuel is consumed, fuel up as soon as possible.

Fuel tank almost empty

The indicator lamp lights up in yellow, indicator in red marking (arrow) → Fig. 13. The reserve fuel is consumed, fuel up as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Driving the vehicle when the fuel level is too low could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- When the fuel level is too low, the fuel supply to the engine could be irregular, especially when driving up or down hills and inclines.
- The steering, all driver assist systems and brake assist systems will not function if the engine stops due to a lack of fuel or irregular fuel supply.
- Always fill the tank when it is still 1/4 full. This reduces the risk of running out of fuel and breaking down.

NOTICE

- Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and its descriptions and meanings could lead to vehicle damages.
- Do not run the tank completely empty. Irregular filling periods can cause backfiring and allow unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system. This could damage the catalytic converter!

The small arrow next to the fuel pump symbol → Fig. 12 or → Fig. 13 in the display instrument indicates the side of the vehicle on which the fuel tank flap is located. ◁

Engine coolant temperature indicator

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 14.

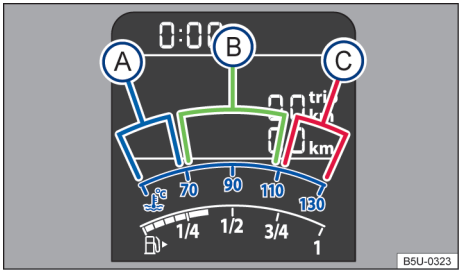


Fig. 14 Engine coolant temperature indicator in the instrument cluster (variable 1): Ⓐ cold zone; Ⓑ normal zone; Ⓒ warning zone. ▶

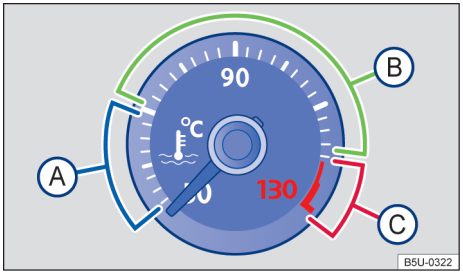


Fig. 15 Engine coolant temperature indicator in the instrument cluster (variable 2): Ⓐ cold zone; Ⓑ normal zone; Ⓒ warning zone.

Ⓐ **Cold zone.** The engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid engine overloading and high rotation while the engine is cooled.

Ⓑ **Normal zone.**

Ⓒ **Warning zone.** Coolant temperature too high.

Engine coolant

The red indicator lamp flashes.

The engine coolant level is not correct or the coolant system is faulty.

Stop driving!

– Stop the vehicle, turn the engine off and let it cool down.
– Check coolant level, if the level is low, refill with engine coolant → page 163.
– If the warning lamp remains lit despite the coolant level being correct, then there is a fault in the system. Go to a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any warning lamps or text messages that appear.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to vehicle damages. ◁

Display indicators

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 14.

On the dash panel insert display several different pieces of information may be displayed according to the version of the vehicle:

– Warning and information displays → page 19
– Distance displays
– Time
– Exterior temperature
– Gear recommendation → page 80
– Multifunction display and menus for various settings → page 21
– Service interval display → page 20
– Fuel level display → page 16
– Engine coolant temperature display → page 16

Distance displays

The *odometer* records the total distance travelled by the car.

The *trip recorder* (**trip**) shows the distance travelled since the trip recorder was last reset. The last digit stands for 100 m.

Exterior temperature indicator

Whenever the exterior temperature is below +4°C, a "snowflake symbol" ❄ appears on the exterior temperature indicator (ice on the road). This symbol starts to flash and lights up until the exterior temperature rises above +6 °C → ⚠.

If the vehicle is parked or moving at a very low speed, the indicated temperature may be slightly higher than the actual exterior temperature, due to the heat generated by the engine.

The measurement range is -40°C to +50°C.

Gear-change indicator

Depending on the vehicle version, a gear selection recommendation may be indicated on the instrument cluster display to optimize fuel savings → page 80.

Radio

In some versions, certain radio functions are indicated on the instrument cluster display only while the vehicle is running. ▶

⚠ WARNING

There may be ice layers on roads and bridges even if the exterior temperature is above freezing temperature.

- There may be ice layers on roads even if the exterior temperature is above +4°C and the "snowflake symbol" is not indicated on the display.
- Never consider only the exterior temperature indicator!

Menu On-board Computer

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 14.

Switching between displays

– *Vehicles without multifunction steering wheel:* press the windscreen wiper lever switch.

– *Vehicles with multifunction steering wheel:* press △ or ▽ .

Toggle memory

Press OK to toggle between memories.

Memory 1 - "trip"

The memory records trip and consumption data from the moment the ignition is switched on until the moment it is switched back off.

If the trip is interrupted for more than two hours, the memory is automatically reset. If the journey is continued within two hours of the ignition being switched off, the new values will be added to the existing trip recorder.

Memory 2 - "total trip"

The memory collects journey data for any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes of travel time, 9,999 km distance travelled, or 999 litres of fuel consumed. If any of these maximum limits is exceeded, the memory is automatically deleted and reset to zero.

Manually deletion of memory 1 or 2

– Select the memory that you wish to delete.

– Press and hold the OK button for approximately two seconds.

Indicator "Current fuel consumption"

While the vehicle is motion, current fuel consumption is displayed in km/l while the engine is running. The current value is calculated in 30 meter intervals and updated approximately every second.

Indicator "Average fuel consumption"

The average consumption in km/l is shown after a distance of 300 meters, after switching on the ignition. The display will show dashes up to this point. Displayed values are updated every 5 seconds.

Indicator "Fuel range"

Approximate calculation of the distance in km that can still be travelled with the current fuel level, under the current driving conditions. One factor used for calculating this figure is the current level of fuel consumption.

"Travel time" Indicator

Travel time in hours (h) and minutes (min) elapsed since the ignition was switched on.

Indicator "Distance travelled"

Distance travelled in km since the ignition was switched on.

"Average speed" Indicator

The average speed will be shown after a distance of 300 meters travelled since the ignition was switched on. The display will show dashes up to this point. Displayed values are updated every 5 seconds.

Digital speed indicator

Current vehicle speed displayed digitally.

Saving a speed for the speed warning

– Select the **Speed warning** display.

– Press the OK button to store the current speed or activate the warning system.

– If necessary, set the desired speed with the menu item **+5 km/h** or **-5 km/h** and press the OK button to increase or decrease speed. Press OK again. The speed will be stored and the warning will be activated.

– *To deactivate*, select the **Speed warning** display again and press OK. The speed warning will be deactivated.

Personal selection of displays

In the **Settings** menu, **On-board Computer** submenu, it is possible to select which multifunction display indicators are shown in the instrument cluster display. ◁

Different instrument clusters are available, which means that the versions and displays may vary. In displays without warning or information messages, faults are indicated exclusively by the indicator lamps. ◁

Warning and information texts

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 14.

The system runs a check on certain components and functions in the vehicle when the ignition is switched on or while the vehicle is in motion. Functional faults are indicated by red and yellow symbols with warning and information messages on the instrument cluster display (→ page 13). An acoustic warning is also given in certain cases. The screen may vary according to the version of the instrument cluster fitted.

Existing functional faults can also be accessed manually. Access such faults through the selection menu **Vehicle Est.**.

Priority 1 warning message (red)

Symbol lit up or flashing – partially, along with acoustic warnings. STOP **Stop driving!** Dangerous situation. Check the damaged function and eliminate its cause. If necessary, go to a Volkswagen dealership or a qualified workshop.

Priority 2 warning message (yellow)

Symbol lit up or flashing – partially, along with acoustic warnings. Faulty functions or lack of fluids may damage or interrupt vehicle operation. Check the faulty function as soon as possible. If necessary, go to a Volkswagen dealership or a qualified workshop.

Guidance on information in the owner's manual

Further guidance on the current warning message can be found in the owner´s manual.

Information text.

Information about various procedures within the vehicle.

When there are several warnings, the icons will be displayed in sequence a few seconds each. The symbols will appear until the faults are rectified.

Time

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 14.

– Switch on the ignition.
– To set the clock, press and hold 0.0/SET on the instrument cluster → page 14 *for approximately five seconds*.
– Press and hold 0.0/SET until the hour display starts to flash.
– Briefly press button 0.0/SET to set the hour. Numbers are displayed in ascending order.
– Briefly press 0.0/SET once again to flash the minute display.
– Briefly press 0.0/SET to set the minutes. Numbers are displayed in ascending order.
– Press 0.0/SET again to close the clock settings. ◁

Settings Menu

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 14.

The scope of the menus and information indicators depends on the electronic components shipped with the vehicle and vehicle version scope.

Language

Select the language used in display messages.

MFI

Settings for which MFI data should appear in the instrument cluster display → page 18.

Parking sensor

The parking distance control acoustic warning settings. Increase or decrease the rear parking sensor sound warning volume.

ECO Comfort

Settings for which ECO Comfort data should appear in the instrument cluster display. ▶

The purpose of the ECO Comfort function is to show assistance messages in the instrument cluster display to improve the vehicle's fuel consumption rate.

Which data will be shown in the display can be defined in the **ECO Comfort** submenu. Data may be defined separately, as groups (all options) or also disabling options, so that no alert is shown in the display.

Data available for the vehicle is not shown in the instrument cluster display, since it varies according to the vehicle's electronic system and assembled equipment.

In addition to the warning message shown in the display, other warnings with additional information may also appear.

Warning messages

- **ECO COMFORT Air resistance: Close windows.**
- **ECO COMFORT Air conditioning on: Close windows.**
- **ECO COMFORT Observe the gearshift indicator.**
- **ECO COMFORT When breaking, only declutch below 1300 rpm.**
- **ECO COMFORT Do not activate the gas pedal when starting engine.**
- **ECO COMFORT Do not activate the gas pedal when stationary.**
- **ECO COMFORT Avoid running the engine when stationary.**

Convenience

Settings for the vehicle's convenience functions:

- **Sound warning**: turn the sounds function on or off when locking or unlocking the vehicle. If the sounds function is turned on, a sound (horn) will be made whenever the vehicle is locked, and two sounds whenever the vehicle is unlocked.
- **Light warning**: turn the light warning function on or off when locking or unlocking the vehicle. If the lights function is turned on, turn signals will flash once when the vehicle is locked, and twice when the vehicle is unlocked.
- **Automatic closing**: electric window settings: all windows can be closed or open when locking or unlocking.

Maintenance

Define the mileage in which a visual and acoustic warning must be issued indicating that the vehicle requires maintenance → ⓘ.

Factory setting

Some functions in the **Settings** menu are reset to factory settings.

NOTICE

The **Maintenance** function is an additional guidance feature for established vehicle maintenance procedures. The mileage to be defined must not exceed the mileage established in → page 192. ◁

Service interval display

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 14.

Fig. 16 Instrument cluster display: service interval display.

The service interval display is shown on the instrument cluster → Fig. 10 ② or → Fig. 11 ②.

Different instrument clusters are available, which means that the versions and displays may vary.

Service warning

When a service is becoming due, a service warning is displayed when turning the ignition on.

The mileage or specified interval time correspond to the mileage or interval until the next service.

Service reminder

If the vehicle is **due to be serviced**, the display **INSP** or **Service now!** (for vehicles equipped with the Volkswagen Information System), it will appear in the instrument cluster display for 20 seconds after the vehicle is started. ▶

Resetting the service interval display

If the service was not performed by a Volkswagen Dealership, the instrument cluster display can be reset as follows:

– Switch off the ignition.
– Press and hold the button 0.0/SET.
– Switch on the ignition.
– Release 0.0/SET and press it again within approximately 10 seconds.

Do not reset the display between service intervals. This may result in incorrect displays.

The service message will disappear after a few seconds with the engine running or after pressing the OK button on the windscreen wiper lever.

On-board Computer → page 18
Audio → page 113
Vehicle status → page 21
Settings → page 19

WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Never access the instrument cluster menus while driving.

The menus in the instrument cluster display depend on the vehicle electronics and the level of vehicle equipment.

Display information may be abbreviated or slightly different than described in this document.

Dash panel insert operation

Introduction

With the ignition switched on, the different display functions can be accessed via the menus.

WARNING

Drivers distracted while driving could lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never access the instrument cluster menus while the vehicle is in motion.

Dash panel insert menus

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 21.

The scope of the menus and information indicators depends on the electronic components shipped with the vehicle and vehicle version scope.

A qualified workshop can program and modify other functions depending on the vehicle equipment level. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

Some menu options can only be called up when the vehicle is stationary.

Operation by way of the windshield wiper lever

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 21.

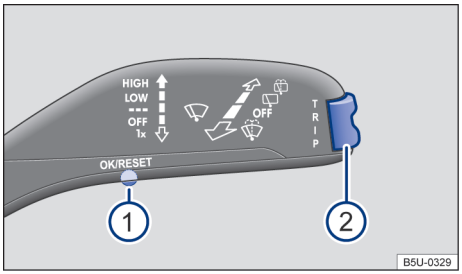


Fig. 17 Vehicles without multifunction steering wheel: press button (1) in the windscreen wiper lever to confirm the menu point and rocker switch (2) to switch between menus.

While a priority 1 warning message is displayed, it is not possible to call up any menu. All warning messages automatically disappear after a few seconds. Additionally, certain warning messages can be confirmed and hidden by pressing the OK button.

Calling up the main menu

– Switch on the ignition.
– If a message or vehicle pictogram is displayed, press OK (→ Fig. 17 1).
– Press and hold → Fig. 17 2 or press upward and downward for at least 2 seconds. The main menu will be displayed.

Opening a submenu

– Press key 2 up or down, until the desired menu item is selected.
– The selected menu option is located between the two horizontal lines.
– Press OK to view a submenu item.

Making settings in the menu

– Make the desired changes using the key of the windshield wiper lever. If necessary, press and hold the controls to increase or decrease the values quickly.
– Select or confirm your selection by pressing OK.

Returning to the main menu

– *Menu:* select the **Back** menu option to leave the submenu.
– *When operated using the windscreen wiper lever:* press and hold the rocker. ◁

Operation by way of the multifunction steering wheel

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 21.

Fig. 18 Right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel: instrument cluster menu control buttons.

Windscreen wiper lever buttons are not available in certain vehicles equipped with multifunction steering wheels. In these cases, the multifunction display is controlled exclusively through the multifunction steering wheel buttons.

Calling up the main menu

– Switch on the ignition.
– If a message or vehicle pictogram is displayed, press OK → Fig. 18.
– The main menu is not displayed. To navigate through menu options, press ⟲ or ⟳ several times.

Opening a submenu

– Press △ or ▽ until the desired menu option is selected.
– The selected menu option is located between the two horizontal lines.
– Press OK to view a submenu item.

Making settings in the menu

– Using the arrow keys of the multifunction steering wheel select the desired changes. If necessary, press and hold the controls to increase or decrease the values quickly.
– Select or confirm your selection by pressing OK.

Returning to the main menu

– *Menu:* select the **Back** menu option to leave the submenu.

Returning to the previous item

Press ⟲.

For vehicles without a radio, the controls for the multifunction steering wheel are deactivated. If an original Volkswagen radio is subsequently installed at a Volkswagen Dealership, it is possible to activate the controls on the multifunction steering wheel. ◁

Safety

Overall guidelines

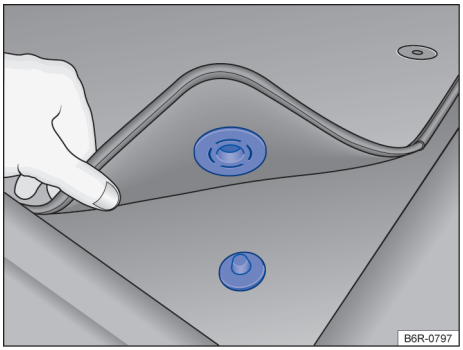


Fig. 19 Driver side mat attached to the floor pin.

Preparations for travel and driving safety

Observe the following information both before and during every journey to ensure your own safety, and the safety of all passengers and other road users→ ⚠:

- ✓ The driver is responsible for all vehicle passengers, especially if they are children.
- ✓ Check that all lights and turn signals are working properly.
- ✓ Check the tyre pressure (→ page 176) and fuel level (→ page 16).
- ✓ Ensure that you have a good, clear view through all of the windows.
- ✓ The supply of air to the engine may not be suppressed and the engine should not be covered with covers or insulating materials → page 154.
- ✓ Secure any objects and luggage in the stowage compartments, the luggage compartment or on the roof → page 119.
- ✓ Ensure that you are able to operate the pedals freely at all times.
- ✓ Secure any children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and size → page 39.
- ✓ Adjust the front seats, headrests and mirrors properly in accordance with the size of the occupants → page 24.
- ✓ Wear proper shoes that provide good grip for your feet when using the pedals.
- ✓ The floor mat in the footwell on the driver side must be securely fastened to ensure the pedal area is unobstructed. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the driver mat may be attached to the floor mat pin → Fig. 19.
- ✓ Assume a correct sitting position before and while driving. This also applies to all passengers → page 24.
- ✓ Fasten your seat belt correctly before setting off and keep it properly fastened throughout the journey. This also applies to all passengers → page 26.
- ✓ Each vehicle occupant must sit in a seat of their own and must have their own seat belt.
- ✓ Never drive if your driving ability is impaired, e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs, among other substances capable of influencing your perception and reaction.
- ✓ Do not allow yourself to be distracted from the traffic (e.g. by passengers, telephone calls, browsing through display menus.)
- ✓ Always adjust speed and driving pattern according to visibility, climate, road, and traffic conditions, under respective speed limits.
- ✓ Observe traffic regulations and speed limits.
- ✓ When travelling long distances, stop and take a break regularly – at least every two hours.
- ✓ Carry animals in the vehicle using restraint systems based on their weight and size.

Driving abroad

Some countries adopt special safety regulations and relevant prescriptions for exhaust gases which may differ from the structural condition of the vehicle. Volkswagen recommends that you visit your local Volkswagen Dealership before travelling abroad in order to learn about any legal requirement and the following issues concerning your destination:

- ✓ Does the vehicle need any technical modifications for driving abroad, e.g. masking or switching the headlights over?
- ✓ Are the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment and spare parts available for service and repair work?
- ✓ Is there a Volkswagen Dealership in the destination country? ▶

Driving abroad (Continued)

- ✓ Is there unleaded petrol with the correct octane number and free of metallic additives (such as manganese) in the destination country?
- ✓ Are the correct engine oil (→ page 158) and other service fluids that comply with Volkswagen specifications available in the destination country?
- ✓ Are special tyres required for travelling in the destination country?

Checks when fuelling

Never carry out any work on the engine or in the engine compartment if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety requirements, as well as without available resources, fluids and tools→ page 154, *Safety guidelines for work in the engine compartment*! The work should be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. Please ensure that the following points are checked regularly, preferably every time you fill the tank:

- ✓ Windscreen washer fluid level → page 158
- ✓ Engine oil level → page 158
- ✓ Engine coolant level → page 162
- ✓ Brake fluid level → page 165
- ✓ Tyre pressure → page 176
- ✓ Vehicle lighting necessary for traffic safety:
  - – Turn signals
  - – Side light, dipped beam and main beam headlights
  - – Tail light lamps
  - – Brake light
  - – Rear fog light
  - – Number plate light

Information about changing bulbs → page 140.

DANGER

Follow the important safety instructions related to the front passenger's front airbag → page 39, *Child seat types*.

WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication or narcotics can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Alcohol, drugs, medication and narcotics can severely impair perception, reaction times and driving safety. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

WARNING

Always observe current traffic regulations and speed limits, and think ahead when driving. Correct interpretation of a driving situation can make the difference between reaching your destination safely and having an accident with severe injuries.

NOTICE

Volkswagen may not be held liable for damages caused to the vehicle due to low-quality fuel, insufficient/incorrect maintenance, and use of non-genuine parts.

Regular servicing of your vehicle not only maintains its value, but also ensures that your vehicle remains roadworthy and in perfect working order. Servicing work should therefore always be carried out in accordance with the Volkswagen maintenance guidelines. Under sever operating conditions it may be necessary to carry out some maintenance jobs prior the next scheduled service. Additional information on adverse conditions is available on → page 192, which prior reading is essential. Contact a Volkswagen Dealership for more information. ◁

Adjusting the seat position

Introduction

Number of seats

Rear seats only apply to the New Extended Cab Saveiro.

The vehicle has a total of **2** seats: 2 front seats. The Extended Cab New Saveiro has a total of **5** seats: 2 front seats and 3 rear seats. Each seat is equipped with safety belts. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Assuming an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle can increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, in the event of a collision or accident, or if the airbags are triggered.

- All vehicle occupants must assume a correct sitting position before setting off and maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies to the use of seat belts.
- The number of vehicle occupants must never exceed the number of seats with seat belts in the vehicle.
- Secure any children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system approved and suitable for their age → page 39, *Transporting children in the vehicle*, → page 34, *Airbag system*.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion. Never place your feet on the seat or on the dash panel and never hold your feet out the window. The airbag and seat belt can otherwise not provide optimal protection and can actually increase the risk of injury during an accident. ◁

Dangers of an incorrect sitting position

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 25.

If the seat belts are not worn or are worn incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. Seat belts can only provide optimal protection if the seat belt routing is correct. An incorrect sitting position considerably impairs the level of protection provided by the seat belts. This could lead to severe or even fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially augmented when a triggered airbag hits an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. The driver is responsible for all vehicle passengers, especially if they are children.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that could be dangerous for all occupants.

Whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel over the seats.
- Never tilt the backrest too far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lay down on the rear seat (applicable to the New Extended Cab Saveiro only).
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never place your feet on the seat cushion or seat backrest.
- Never travel in a footwell.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never travel in the internal luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Any incorrect sitting position in the vehicle increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- All vehicle occupants must maintain a correct sitting position and wear their seat belt properly while the vehicle is in motion.
- Sitting in an incorrect position, not fastening the seat belt, or leaving too short a distance to the airbag exposes the occupants to the risk of sustaining critical or fatal injuries, especially if the airbags are triggered and strike an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. ◁

Correct sitting position

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 25.

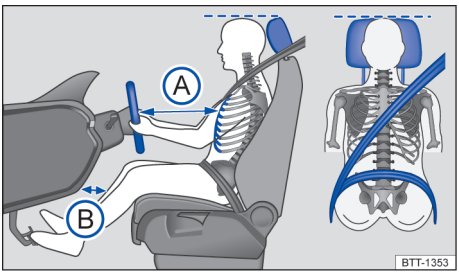


Fig. 20 Correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel, correct seatbelt position and correct headrest adjustment.

The following points describe the correct sitting positions for the driver and passenger.

Persons who due to their physical build are unable to sit correctly in the vehicle should contact a specialized workshop to be informed on possible special installations. The seat belts and airbags can only provide a maximum level of protection if a correct sitting position is assumed. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

Volkswagen recommends the following sitting positions on the seats for the occupants own safety and to reduce the level of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident:

Points for the driver:

- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.
- Adjust the seat so that the distance between the steering wheel and the driver's chest is at least of 25 cm → Fig. 20 Ⓐ and so the driver can firmly hold the steering wheel by its outer rim with both hands and with slightly flexed arms.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the breastbone and not towards the face.
- Adjust the driver's seat lengthwise so that the pedals may be reached with slightly flexed legs and so that the distance between the knees and the dashboard is at least 10 cm → Fig. 20 Ⓑ.
- Adjust the height so that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.
- Always leave both feet in the footwell to maintain control of the vehicle at all times.
- Fasten seat belts properly → page 26.

Points for the front passenger:

- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.
- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible so that the airbag can provide maximum protection if it is triggered.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Fasten seat belts properly → page 26.

Points for rear vehicle passengers:

Valid only for the New Extended Cab Saveiro.

- Adjust the head rest so its top edge is at the same height as the top of the head → Fig. 20 – but not below eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible.
- In case of short stature individuals, push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then located underneath the top edge of the head rest.
- For taller people, push the head rest up as far as possible.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten seat belts properly → page 26. ◁

Seat belts

Introduction

Check the condition of all seat belts regularly. In case of damages to belts, connections, automatic belt retractor, or seat belt latches, the respective seat belt must be immediately replaced by a Volkswagen Dealership → ⚠. One must use correct spare parts that are compatible with the vehicle, equipment level and model year. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Seat belts will only offer the optimum level of protection when they are fastened and used properly.

- Seat belts are the most effective means of reducing the risk of severe and fatal injuries in case of accidents. For the protection of the driver and of all vehicle occupants, seat belts must always be fastened properly when the vehicle is in motion.
- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must assume a correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip. This applies to all passengers in any traffic condition.
- While the vehicle is in motion, secure all children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their age, as well as properly secured seat belts → page 39, *Transporting children in the vehicle*.
- Only start driving when all passengers have correctly fastened their seat belts.
- Only ever insert the latch plate into the buckle of the associated seat, and always ensure that it engages properly. Using a buckle that does not belong to the seat that you are occupying reduces the level of protection and can lead to severe injuries.
- Never let any foreign bodies or liquids enter the seat belt buckle slot. This could prevent belt buckles from working properly.
- Never unfasten the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never allow more than one person to share the same seat belt.
- Never allow children or babies to be transported on someone's lap, or while being held.
- Never drive wearing loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket). This could prevent the seat belts from fitting and functioning properly.

⚠ WARNING

Damaged seat belts are extremely dangerous and can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Never damage the belt by trapping it in the door or in the seat mechanism.
- If the belt bands fabric or any other part of the seat belt becomes damaged, the seat belt may tear during an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.
- Damaged seat belts must be replaced immediately with new seat belts at a Volkswagen Dealership. Seat belts used during an accident and subjected to stress or belt tensioner activation must be replaced by a Volkswagen Dealership. Replacement may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.
- Never attempt to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself. All repairs to seat belts, belt retractors and buckles must be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealership. ◁

Warning lamp

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 27.

Fig. 21 Instrument cluster display warning lamp.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the warning lamp and the seat belt acoustic warning may not be available.

An acoustic warning sounds for a few seconds whenever the seat belts are not fastened prior to reaching a speed of more than 25 km/h or whenever the seat belts are unfastened while driving. In addition, the warning lamp flashes .

The warning light is only switched off after the driver fastens the respective seat belt, while the ignition is turned on. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Seat belts will only offer the optimum level of protection when they are fastened and used properly. ◁

Frontal collisions and the laws of physics

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 27.**

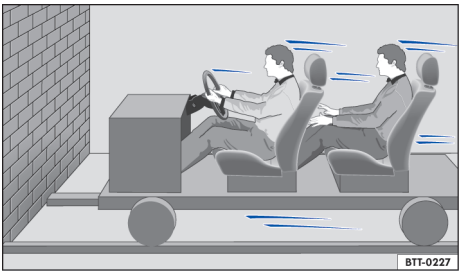


Fig. 22 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a brick wall.

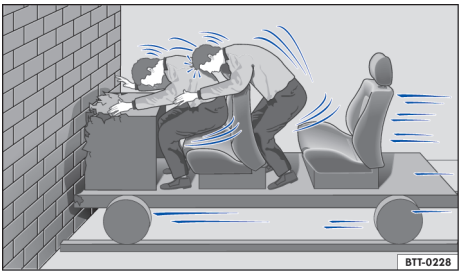


Fig. 23 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle striking a brick wall

The physical principles involved in a frontal collision are relatively simple. As soon as the vehicle is in motion → Fig. 22, both the moving vehicle and its passengers gain movement energy. Such energy is known as “kinetic energy”.

The higher the vehicle speed and the heavier the weight of the vehicle, the greater the amount of energy that will have to be released in the event of an accident.

However, the most significant factor is the vehicle speed. For example, when the speed doubles from 25 km/h to approximately 50 km/h (15 mph to approximately 30 mph), the kinetic energy increases fourfold!

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the vehicle speed and weight of the vehicle and passengers The higher the speed and the heavier the weight, the greater the amount of energy that will be released in the event of an accident.

Passengers not wearing seat belts are, therefore, not “connected” to the vehicle. In the event of a frontal collision they will continue to move forward at the same speed at which the vehicle was travelling before impact, until something stops them. Because the passengers in our example are not restrained by seat belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy will only be released at the point of impact against the wall → Fig. 23.

At a speed of approximately 50 km/h (30 mph), the forces acting on the body during an accident can easily exceed one tonne (1,000 kg). These forces are even greater at higher speeds.

This example applies not only to frontal collisions, but to all kinds of accidents and collisions. ◁

What happens to passengers who have not fastened their seat belts

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 27.**

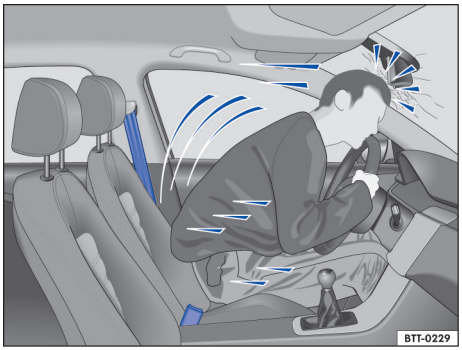


Fig. 24 An unbelted driver is thrown forward. ▶

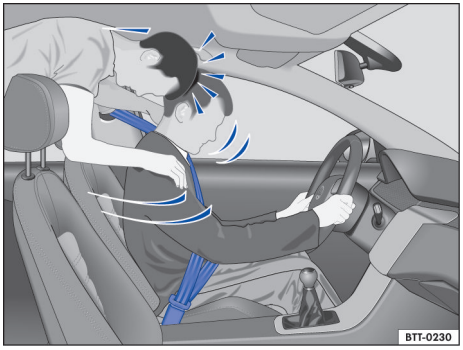


Fig. 25 The unbelted rear passenger is thrown forward violently, hitting the belted driver.

Many people believe that they can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision. This is not true.

Even at low speeds, the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that occupants cannot brace themselves with their arms and hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers are thrown forward and will make unchecked contact with parts of the vehicle interior, e.g. the steering wheel, dash panel, or windscreen → Fig. 24.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. When triggered, airbags only provide additional protection. Airbags are not triggered in all kinds of accidents. Even if the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their seat belt and wear it correctly while the vehicle is in motion. This reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident - regardless of whether an airbag is available.

An airbag can only be triggered once. To achieve best possible protection, seat belts must always be worn properly. This also ensures that protection is provided in accidents in which the airbag is not triggered. Any vehicle occupant not wearing a seat belt can be thrown out of the vehicle and sustain even more severe or even fatal injuries as a result.

It is also essential for rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently in an accident. Rear passengers who are not wearing seat belts endanger not only themselves and the driver, but also other people in the vehicle → Fig. 25. ◁

Seat belts protect

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 27.**

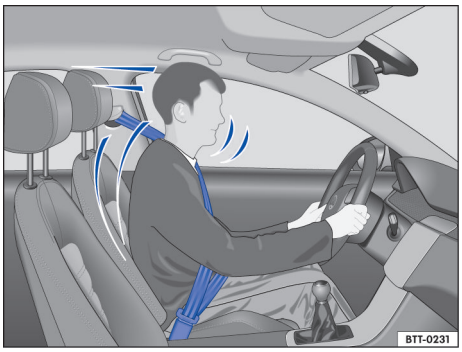


Fig. 26 Driver restrained by a properly positioned seat belt during a sudden braking manoeuvre.

Correctly fastened seat belts can make a major difference. When fastened properly, seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting positions and considerably reduce the kinetic energy in the event of an accident. Seat belts also help to prevent uncontrolled movements that could lead to severe injuries. Additionally, wearing seat belts properly reduces the risk of being thrown from the vehicle → Fig. 26.

Passengers wearing seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to reduce the kinetic energy generated. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to mitigate kinetic energy. The amount of energy generated will thus decrease, thereby reducing the risk of injury.

Accident statistics prove that correctly fastened seat belts considerably reduce the risk of injury in all types of accidents and increase the chance of survival in an accident. This is why seat belts must be fastened before every trip - even if your only planning on going “around the block”.

Furthermore, properly worn seat belts ensure proper airbag operation in case of accidents. For this reason, the use of seat belts is mandatory under Brazilian law.

For example, the front airbags will only be triggered in certain types of frontal collision. Front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal ▶

collisions, minor side collisions, rear collisions, rolls or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold in the control unit is not exceeded. ◁

Using seat belts

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 27.

Checklist

Using seat belts→ ⚠:

- ✓ Check the condition of all seat belts regularly.
- ✓ Keep the seat belts clean.
- ✓ Never let any foreign bodies and liquids get on to the seat belt, the latch plate or into the slot for the seat belt buckle.
- ✓ Do not trap or damage the seat belt and latch plate (e.g. when closing the door).
- ✓ Never remove, modify or repair the seat belt or any part of the belt fixture system.
- ✓ Always fasten the seat belt correctly before driving and wear it properly while the vehicle is in motion.

Twisted seat belt

If it is difficult to remove the seat belt from the belt guide, the seat belt may have become twisted if it was returned too quickly into the side trim: In this case:

– Take hold of the latch plate then slowly and carefully pull out the seat belt.

– Untwist the seat belt and guide it back slowly by hand.

Fasten the seat belt even if you are unable to undo the twist. However, the twist should not be in an area of the seat belt that comes into direct contact with the body! The twist should be corrected immediately by a Volkswagen Dealership.

⚠ WARNING

Using seat belts incorrectly increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Regularly check to see if the seat belt and its related parts are in perfect working conditions.
- Keep the seat belts clean.
- Do not allow the belt bands to become jammed, damaged or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Always keep the latch plate and slot in the buckle free from foreign bodies and liquids. ◁

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 27.

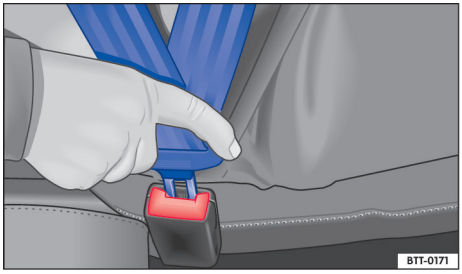


Fig. 27 Inserting the seat belt latch plate into the buckle.

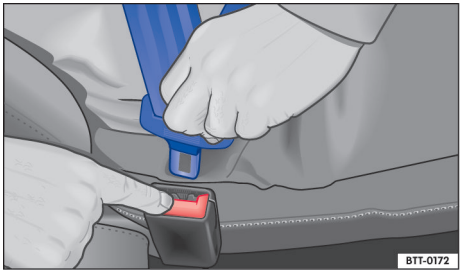


Fig. 28 Removing the seat belt latch plate into the buckle.

If worn properly, seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting position during an accident or braking manoeuvre, giving occupants maximum protection → ⚠.

Fastening the seat belts

Fasten seat belts before driving.

– Always adjust the seats and head rests properly → page 24.

– Gently pull the seat belt through the latch plate, across the chest and the pelvic area. **Do not** twist the seat belt → ⚠. ▶

– Insert the latch plate securely into the buckle of the respective seat → Fig. 27.
– Pull test the seat belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely locked in the buckle.

Unfastening the seat belts

Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary → ⚠.

– Press the red button in the belt buckle → Fig. 28. The latch plate is released and springs out.
– Guide the belt back so that it rolls up easily, without twisting the seat belt and without damaging the trim.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat belt routing can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- The seat belts only offer best protection when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly according to the occupant's height.
- Unfastening seat belts while the vehicle is in motion can lead to severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.

Seat belt routing

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 27.

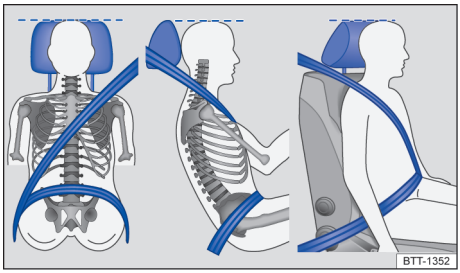


Fig. 29 Correct seat belt routing and head rest adjustment.

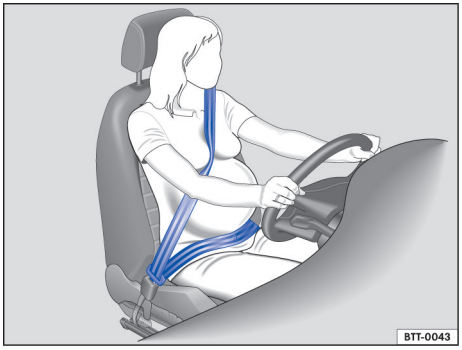


Fig. 30 Correct seat belt routing during pregnancy.

Seat belts only provide an optimum level of protection during an accident and reduce the risk of severe or fatal injuries when they are routed correctly. Correct seat belt bands routing also holds the vehicle occupants in position so that an inflating airbag can offer the maximum level of protection. Therefore always fasten your seat belt and ensure that the seat belt routing is correct.

An incorrect sitting position can cause severe or fatal injuries → page 24, *Adjusting the seat position*.

Correct seat belt routing

– The shoulder part of the seat belt must always lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck, over or under the arm, or behind the back.
– The lower seat belt strap must always lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach.
– The seat belt must always lie flat and firm against the body. Slightly loosen the seat belt if necessary.

For **pregnant women**, the seat belt must be positioned over the chest and as low as possible over the pelvis, so that no pressure is exerted on the lower body → Fig. 30.

Correct seat belt routing according to height

The seat belt routing can be adjusted as follows:

– Belt height adjuster for the front seats → page 32.
– Seat with height adjustment → page 60.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat belt routing can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident or a sudden braking / driving manoeuvre.

- The seat belts only offer best protection when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.
- The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder and never under the arm or across the neck.
- The seat belt must lie flat and firmly over the chest.
- The lower seat belt strap must always lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and firmly over the pelvis. Slightly loosen the seat belt if necessary.
- For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must be as low as possible over the pelvis around the "bulge" of the belly.
- Do not twist the belt bands while securing the seat belt.
- Never hold the seat belt away from the body by hand.
- The belt bands should not lie over hard or fragile objects, such as glasses, pens or keys.
- Never use seat belt clips, retaining rings or similar items to alter the seat belt routing.

If a person's physical build prevents them from routing the seat belt properly, contact a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop to find out about any special modifications so that the seat belts and airbags can provide the optimum level of protection. ◁

Belt height adjuster

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 27.

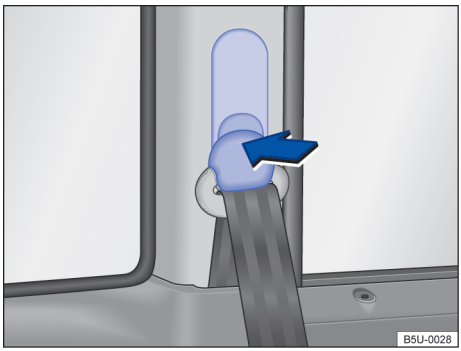


Fig. 31 Next to the seats: seat belt height adjuster.

Depending on the vehicle's version, seat belt height adjustment may not be available.

The seat belt height adjusters can be used to adjust the seat belt position on the shoulder area, so it can be fastened properly:

– Press and hold the shoulder belt guide as indicated by the arrows → Fig. 31.
– Push the shoulder belt guide up or down so that the seat belt lies over the middle of the shoulder → page 31, *Seat belt routing*.
– Let go of the shoulder belt guide.
– Pull sharply on the seat belt to check whether the shoulder belt guide is engaged securely.

For those versions that do not have this manual adjustment, the vehicle has two positions on the column for the seatbelt height adjustment to the shoulder. The seatbelts are factory installed to the first position and can be adjusted to the upper position. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the seat belt height when the vehicle is in motion. ◁

Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner and belt roll-back function

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 27.

Seat belts are part of the vehicle's safety system → page 36 and are made up of the following important functions:

Automatic belt retractor

The safety belts are fitted with an automatic retriever roller, this device keeps the safety belt adjusted to the passenger's body. Full freedom of movement in the passenger's upper body area is made possible when the seat belt is pulled slowly or when the vehicle is travelling at normal speeds. However, the automatic belt retractor locks the seat belt if the belt is pulled out quickly, during sudden braking, when driving uphill or downhill or around bends, and during acceleration.

Seat belt tensioners

Front seat belts are equipped with belt tensioners and roll-back function. Rear seat belts are not equipped with these features.

Belt tensioners are activated by sensors during severe frontal and rear collisions, tightening the seat belts against the direction in which they are pulled. Safety belt clearances are eliminated when the belt tensioner is activated, reducing the forward movement of passengers towards the impact direction. Belt tensioners works together with the airbag system. Belt tensioners are not activated in minor front collisions, rolls or accidents in which the threshold in the control unit is not exceeded.

A fine dust may be generated upon activation. This is perfectly normal and does not represent fire risk.

Seat belt roll-back function

The front seat belts are equipped with roll-back function.

The seat belt roll-back function minimizes seat belt force acting over the body in case of accidents.

All safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Volkswagen Dealerships are familiar with such requirements. ◁

Service and disposal of belt tensioners

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 27.

Seat belts may become damaged during any work on the belt tensioners or while removing or refitting any vehicle parts in conjunction with any other repair work. Such damages will not always be noticeable. The consequence may be that the belt tensioners could function incorrectly, or not function at all, in the event of an accident.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Volkswagen Dealerships are familiar with such requirements.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injuries may be increased if the seat belts, automatic belt retractors and belt tensioners are not used correctly, or if they are repaired by a non-professional. In this case, the belt tensioners may not be triggered when they should, or they may be triggered unexpectedly.

- Only Volkswagen → page 203, *Accessories, modifications, repairs and part replacement* may carry out repairs, adjustments or removal and refitting of parts in the belt tensioner system or seat belts.
- Belt tensioners and automatic belt retractors cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.
- Belt tensioners can only be activated once. Once the belt tensioners are activated, they must be replaced.

Airbag modules and belt tensioners may contain toxic substances. This product cannot be disposed / discarded along with common trash. For your own safety and comfort, Volkswagen recommends replacing belt tensioners and airbag modules only at Volkswagen Dealerships. ◁

Airbag system

Introduction

The vehicle is equipped with one front airbag for the driver and one for the passenger. Front airbags can provide the driver and front passenger with additional chest and head protection if the seat, seat belts, head rests and, in the case of the driver, steering wheel are adjusted and used correctly. Airbags are meant to provide additional protection. Airbags do not deploy in all collision situations and do not replace seat belts, which should always be used, even when the vehicle is equipped with front airbags.

WARNING

Never rely solely on the airbag system for your protection.

- Even if an airbag is triggered, it only offers additional protection.
- The airbag system only enhances protection if the seat belt is properly used, in order to mitigate injuries → page 26, *Seat belts*.
- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must assume a correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip.

WARNING

The risk of injury increases if there are any items located between the occupant and the deployment area of the airbag when it is triggered. This will impinge on the deployment zone of the airbag or the items will be flung against the body.

- Never hold any objects in your hand or on your lap while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport any objects on the passenger seat. Objects could enter the deployment zone of the airbag during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres and then be flung dangerously through the vehicle interior if the airbag is activated.
- People, animals or objects must never be in-between the vehicle's front seat occupants, the rear side seat occupants and the airbag expansion areas. Ensure this is also followed by children and passengers.

WARNING

The airbag system only supports a single airbag triggering event. If the airbags are triggered, the airbag system must be replaced.

- Airbags that have been triggered, and any affected system parts, must immediately be replaced with new parts that are approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle.
- Airbag system repairs and part replacements must only be carried out by Volkswagen Dealerships. Volkswagen Dealerships have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel for this purpose.
- Never use recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.
- Never alter any components of the airbag system.

WARNING

A fine dust (non-toxic) may be generated upon activation. This is perfectly normal and does not represent fire risk.

- The fine dust can cause irritation to the skin and eye membranes and cause breathing difficulties, particularly for people suffering from asthma or people who have or had other respiratory problems. To help reduce breathing difficulties, get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors for more fresh air.
- If you come into contact with the dust, wash your hands and face with a mild soap and water before eating.
- Do not let the dust get into your eyes or into open wounds.
- If dust has entered your eyes, rinse them with water.

WARNING

Cleaning products case the airbag module surfaces to become porous and brittle. In case of activation, such parts could break and cause severe injuries.

- Never apply any chemical or cleaning products to the airbag module surfaces. Use only damp cloths to clean these areas.

◁

Indicator lamp

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 34.

Fig. 32 Indicator lamp on the dashboard for the deactivated front passenger airbag.

Depending on the vehicle version, the front passenger airbag dashboard indicator light may not be available.

The yellow indicator lamp on the instrument cluster display lights up briefly after switching on the ignition to test for proper operation, and goes off after a few seconds.

OFF Front passenger front airbag disabled. The yellow indicator lamp on the centre console is permanently on.

If, while the passenger front airbag is deactivated, the OFF PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp **is not permanently lit** or if it remains lit along with the instrument cluster indicator lamp, the airbag system may be malfunctioning → ⚠.

⚠ DANGER

If there is a fault in the airbag system, the airbag may not trigger correctly, may not trigger at all or may trigger unexpectedly. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- The airbag system must be checked by a Volkswagen Dealership as soon as possible.
- Never fit a child seat on the passenger seat while the airbag system is activated! The passenger front airbag may be triggered in an accident, despite damages.

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and its descriptions and meanings could lead to vehicle damages. ◁

Troubleshooting

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 34.

Airbags system or belt tensioner damaged

The yellow indicator lamp is permanently on. A message will also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

A malfunction was identified in at least one airbag or belt tensioner.

– Contact a Volkswagen Dealership.
– Belt tensioners and the airbag system must be checked.

OFF Front passenger front airbag disabled

The yellow indicator lamp is permanently on for the deactivated front passenger front airbag.

The front passenger front airbag is deactivated.

If, while the passenger front airbag is deactivated, the OFF PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp **is not permanently lit** or if it remains lit along with the instrument cluster indicator lamp, the airbag system may be malfunctioning → ⚠ in *Indicator lamp* on page 35.

– Check whether the front passenger front airbag needs to stay deactivated, for instance, while using a child seat on the front passenger seat. ◁

Description and function of the airbags

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 34.

The airbags can protect vehicle occupants in case of accidents, reducing the occupant's movements in case of frontal collisions.

When an airbag is triggered, it is inflated by a gas generator. This causes the airbag covers to break, and the airbags inflate forcefully to cover their deployment zones within milliseconds. After holding vehicle occupants in place, who must always wear their respective seat belts, inflated airbags release a gas through openings located away from the vehicle occupants. This can ▶

reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. A triggered airbag will not always prevent other injuries such as swelling, bruising and grazing. Heat by friction can also be generated during an airbag triggering event.

Airbags provide no protection for the arms or lower body parts.

The most important factors regarding airbag triggering are the type of accident, the vehicle impact area, the angle, the intensity of the impact, the vehicle structure, and the obstacle to which the vehicle collided. Therefore, airbags are not triggered in all collisions.

The airbag system's triggering depends on the intensity of the impact registered by an electronic control unit. If the accident's characteristics do not fall under the parameters configured in the control unit, the airbags are not triggered. Vehicle damages and cost repairs are used as indicators that they airbag system should have been triggered. Important factors in the triggering of the airbag include the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the vehicle hits, the angle and intensity of impact, and the vehicle impact area.

Airbags are merely used as additional safety features for the seat belts in some accidents in which the impact intensity is sufficient to trigger the airbags. Airbags can only be triggered once and only in certain situations. The seat belts are always there to provide protection in situations in which the airbags are not triggered or have already been triggered. For example, if the vehicle collides with a further vehicle following the initial collision, or is hit by another vehicle.

The airbag system is part of the vehicle's overall passive safety concept. The airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have assumed a proper sitting position ⚠ → page 24.

Components of the vehicle safety concept

The following vehicle safety equipment makes up the vehicle's safety concept to reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. Depending on the vehicle version, some of the equipment may not be fitted in your vehicle or may not be available at all in some countries.

- Front airbags for driver and front passenger.
- Height-adjustable head restraints optimised for rear impact.
- Seats.
- Optimised seat belts for all seats.
- Adjustable steering column.
- Brakes / parking brakes.
- Belt tension limiter for the driver and front passenger.
- Seat belt warning lamp.
- Airbag indicator lamp.
- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp.
- Belt tensioners for the driver and front passenger.
- Belt height adjuster for the front seats.
- Sensors and control units.

Situations in which front airbags are not triggered:

- If the ignition is switched off during a collision.
- If the impact intensity measured in control units is too small during frontal collisions.
- During minor side collisions.
- During rear collisions.
- If the vehicle rolls over.
- If the impact intensity measured by the control unit is insufficient to trigger the airbags.

In case of airbag triggering - Crash detection function

Whenever airbags are deployed during an accident, the crash detection functions is activated and the following actions may occur:

- Unlocking of vehicle doors (valid for vehicles equipped with electric central locking system) → page 47.
- Fuel supply cut off → page 131.
- Activation of inner vehicle lights → page 67.
- Activation of warning lamps → page 42.

Warning lamps may be switched off via the dash panel switch. ◁

Front airbags

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 34.

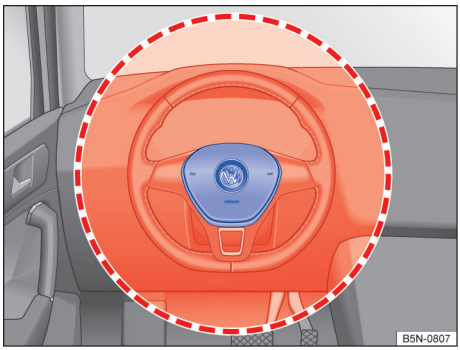


Fig. 33 Location and deployment zone of the driver front airbag.

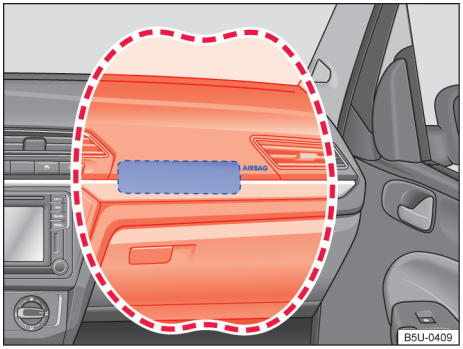


Fig. 34 Location and deployment zone of the passenger front airbag.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision. Farthest distance from the front airbag is recommended; at least 25 cm → page 24. This allows the front airbags to inflate fully when triggered, thus providing maximum protection.

The driver front airbag is located in the steering wheel → Fig. 33 and the passenger front airbag is located in the dash panel → Fig. 34. Airbag locations are identified by the text “AIRBAG”.

The areas highlighted in red → Fig. 33 and → Fig. 34 are covered by the front airbags when triggered (deployment zone). For this reason, you must never leave or attach any items in these areas → ⚠.

The airbag covers fold out of the steering wheel → Fig. 33 and dash panel → Fig. 34 when the driver and passenger airbags are activated. The airbag covers remain connected to the steering wheel or the dashboard.

⚠ DANGER

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the front airbags clear.
- Never attach any items, such as drink or telephone holders, GPS, etc., to the covers of the airbags or anywhere in the airbag deployment zone.
- Front seat occupants must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between themselves and the airbags.
- Do not attach objects, such as GPS devices, in the windscreen above the passenger front airbag.
- Do not attach, line, modify, or place any materials over the centre steering wheel surface (horn activation) and the front passenger airbag module surface, on the dash panel.

⚠ WARNING

The front airbags are triggered in front of the steering wheel → Fig. 33 and dash panel → Fig. 34.

- When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring: 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions.
- Adjust the driver seat in such a way that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel. If your physical build makes it impossible to fulfil this requirement, you must contact a Volkswagen Dealership in order to implement any necessary modifications.
- Adjust the passenger seat so that the distance between the passenger and the dashboard is as large as possible. ▶

Airbag system parts must never be reused in case of vehicle or component scrapping. All applicable environment disposal standards must be followed, in addition to other safety standards in effect. Volkswagen Dealerships are familiar with such requirements. ◁

Manually turn the front passenger airbag on and off using the switch activated by the key

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 34.

Fig. 35 On the stowage compartment: switch deactivated by the key to switch the passenger front airbag on and off.

Depending on the vehicle version, the front passenger airbag on/off switch may not be available.

When fastening a rear-facing child seat on the passenger seat, the passenger front airbag must be deactivated!

Switch off the passenger front airbag

– Switch off the ignition.
– Open the storage compartment.
– Unfold the key bit out of the remote control vehicle key → page 45 or use the mechanical vehicle key.
– Using the key bit, turn the key-activated switch → Fig. 35 into **OFF** position.
– Close the stowage compartment.
– The PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** indicator lamp on the dashboard is permanently lit while the ignition is switched on → page 35.

Switch on the passenger front airbag

– Switch off the ignition.
– Open the storage compartment.
– Unfold the key bit out of the remote control vehicle key → page 45 or use the mechanical vehicle key.
– Using the key bit, turn the key-activated switch → Fig. 35 into **ON** position.
– Close the stowage compartment.
– Check if, while the ignition is switched on, the **OFF** PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp on the dash panel is *not* lit → page 35.

Recognition feature for the deactivated passenger front airbag

A switched off passenger front airbag is **exclusively** indicated by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** indicator lamp permanently lit in the (**OFF** permanently lit yellow lamp) → page 35, *Indicator lamp*.

If the indicator lamp **OFF** on the centre console **is not permanently lit** or if it is lit along with the indicator lamp of the instrument cluster, no child seat system may be assembled over the passenger seat, for safety reasons. The passenger front airbag may be triggered in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

The passenger front airbag may only be deactivated in special cases.

- Switch the passenger front airbag on and off only while the ignition is switched off, in order to prevent damages to the airbag system.
- The driver is responsible for the correct positioning of the switch activated by the key.
- Switch off the passenger front airbag only when there is a child seat assembled on the passenger seat, under special circumstances.
- Switch the passenger front airbag back on as soon as the child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat. ◁

Transporting children in the vehicle

Introduction

Child seats reduce the risk of injury in an accident. Always transport children in child seats, according to applicable laws!

Note:

– Child seats are grouped according to the child's size, age and weight.
– Installing child seats in the vehicle can be executed with different retaining systems.

Before transporting babies and children in child seats on the front passenger seat, it is imperative to read all airbag system information and learn about potential injuries airbag deployment can cause children in the 0 and 0+ group.

This information is very important for the safety of the driver and all passengers, especially babies and small children.

Volkswagen recommends using child seats from the Volkswagen Original Accessories Program. These child seats were developed and approved for use in Volkswagen vehicles.

WARNING

Children who are not strapped in or who are not strapped in properly could sustain severe or fatal injuries while the vehicle is in motion.

- Never leave a child seat facing backwards on the front passenger seat without disabling the airbag for risk of possible injuries should the airbag trigger.
- Volkswagen recommends to always transport children of age under 12 years or less than 1.50 m high on the rear seat.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in an authorised restraint system suitable to their age.
- Always fasten child seat or children's seat belts correctly and ensure that children assume a correct sitting position.
- Ensure that the seat belt routing is correct for each use condition. If the seat belt must be passed over the child's body, ensure that the seat belt passes through the child's shoulder and never through the child's neck.
- Never allow children or babies to be transported on someone's lap, or while being held.
- Only ever fasten one child into each child seat.
- Read and observe the child seat's manufacturer instructions, especially regarding proper seat belt attachment.
- Replace child seats that withstand any force during an accident as they could have sustained damage that may not be visible.

WARNING

An unsecured, unoccupied child seat could be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident. This could cause injuries.

- Always secure child seats safely, even if they are not being used, or stow them in the luggage compartment while the vehicle is in motion.

Child seat types

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 39.

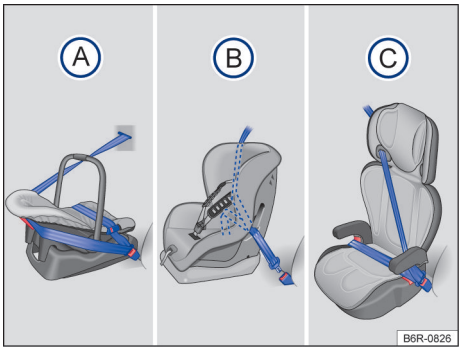


Fig. 36 Figures Ⓐ, Ⓑ and Ⓒ illustrate the main securing points for the child restraint system for children only wearing the seat belt.

Always secure child seats properly, safely and in accordance with the installation instructions from the child seat manufacturer.

The child seat must be fastened by the vehicle's seat belts and must not allow longitudinal or transversal movement.

Legislation and legal requirements take precedence over the descriptions in this Owner's Manual. Various standards and regulations govern the use of child seats and methods for securing them (→ page 26). For example, this could mean that in some countries you are not allowed to use child seats on certain seats in the vehicle.

Country-specific standards for transporting children in vehicles

Child seats must conform to the ECE-R 44[1)] standard (Europe). Additional information can be obtained from your Volkswagen Dealership and online at www.volkswagen.com.

Country-specific securing systems

Child seat types→ Fig. 36:

Ⓐ Portable crib or baby convenience seat

Ⓑ Child seat

Ⓒ Lifting seat

The systems are made up of attachments for child restraint systems for children wearing the seat belt in the rear seat.

Group classification for child seats according to ECE-R 44

Weight class	Child's weight	Age
Group 0	up to 10 kg	up to approximately 9 months
Group 0+	up to 13 kg	up to approximately 18 months
Group 1	9 kg to 18 kg	approximately 8 months to $3^1/_2$ years
Group 2	15 kg to 25 kg	approximately 3 to 7 years
Group 3	22 kg to 36 kg	approximately 6 to 12 years

In addition to age range, other aspects must be considered for child seat adjustment purposes, such as weight, height, and physical build of the child, since the child's biotype may not correspond to the majority of the population within the same age range. In case of doubts, please contact a Volkswagen Dealership.

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE R 44 standard bear the test mark firmly on the seat: a capital E in a circle, below the test number.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Always follow the instructions on the checklist and comply with applicable safety precautions.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of an accident, the rear seat is the safest place for children with properly fastened seat belts.

- A suitable child seat, correctly fitted and used on one of the rear seats, will provide the maximum level of protection for children up to 12 years old in most accident scenarios. ◁

Installation and child seat usage in the vehicle

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 39.

The laws of physics, which come into force on a vehicle during a collision or any other kind of accident, also apply to children → page 26. In contrast to adults and teenagers, however, children's muscles and bones are not yet fully developed. Children have a higher risk for children of sustaining severe injuries in case of an accident.

Children must be transported using child restraint systems that are specifically suited to their size, weight and physical build, as children's bodies are not yet fully developed.

Not all countries allow you to transport children on the front passenger seat.

The front passenger airbag can pose severe risks for children transported in a rear-facing child seat. ▶

1) ECE Regulation: **E**conomic **C**ommission for **E**urope-Regelung

If a rear-facing child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, an inflating passenger front airbag can strike it with such force that critical or fatal injuries may occur → ⚠. Therefore, **never** use a rear-facing child seat on the passenger seat when the front passenger airbag is activated!

Exceptions provided to transport children in the front seat → ⚠.

– When the vehicle only has front seats.
– When the number of children below the age of 10 exceeds the rear seat capacity. In this case, children with greatest stature may be transported in the front seat, using the vehicle's seat belt or the appropriate securing system according to the child's age.

Airbag sticker

In the vehicle there will be a sticker with important information on the front passenger front airbag. The content depends on the country and may vary. Check the sticker attached to the driver and/or front passenger sun visor.

– To the windscreen.

Prior installing a child seat backwards it is imperative to observe the warnings → ⚠.

What to be aware of when a child is using the front passenger seat:

– The front passenger seat backrest must be in an upright position.
– The front passenger seat must be pushed as far back as possible.
– The child must be using an appropriate child seat for his/her respective age, weight, and height.
– If seat belt height adjustment is available, it must be adjusted to the most adequate position according to the height of the child or the child seat.

⚠ DANGER

Never use child seats facing backwards in the front passenger seat while the front passenger airbag is activated. The child may be killed upon front airbag deployment, since the child seat is impacted with great strength and projected against the backrest.

⚠ DANGER

- If a child must use the front passenger seat, push the seat as far back as possible longitudinally in order to ensure greater distance from the front airbag.
- Keep the backrest in an upright position.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in an authorised restraint system suitable for their height and weight.

Using child seats on rear vehicle seats

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 39.

Rear seat only applies only to the New Extended Cab Saveiro.

Initially, it is imperative to distinguish the child restraint system principle, as per → page 39.

Before assembling the child seat, adjust or remove the head rest and adjust the front seat backrest angles, in case they somehow interfere with the child seat → page 61.

Securing child seats using the seat belt

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 39.

Universal child seats may be secured with the seat belt of seats indicated on the table with **u**. When such seats cannot be secured, an **x** is indicated.

Weight class	Front passenger seat	Rear side seats	rear central seat
Group 0 : up to 10 kg	**x**[a)]	**u** secured opposite to the driving direction	**x**
Group 0+ : up to 13 kg	**x**[a)]	**u** secured opposite to the driving direction	**x**
Group 1 : 9 to 18 kg	**u** secured in the driving direction	**u** secured in the driving direction	**x**
Group 2 15 to 25 kg	**u** secured in the driving direction	**u** secured in the driving direction	**x**
Group 3 22 to 36 kg	**u** secured in the driving direction	**u** secured in the driving direction	**x**

a) For vehicles with single and extended cab install backwards to the driving direction with the airbag deactivated → page 38.

Securing child seats using the seat belt

– Read and follow the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer.
– If the child seat is assembled on the front passenger seat, push the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the backrest to an upright position → page 24.
– If seat belt height adjustment is available, it must be placed in the optimal position based on the height of the child or the child seat.
– Place the child seat over the seat and pass the seat belt as per the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
– Adjust or remove the headrest to prevent interference with the child seat, if necessary → page 62.
– Ensure that the seat belt is not twisted.
– Insert the seat belt latch plate into the respective buckle until a "clicking" sound is heard.
– The seat belt must lie firmly and adequately over the child seat or the child.
– Conduct seat belt traction test – ensure that the lower belt strap is locked and can no longer be pulled out.

Removing child seats

Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary → ⚠.

– Press the red button in the buckle. The latch plate is released and springs out.
– Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily, without twisting the seat belt and without damaging the trim.
– Remove the child seat from the vehicle according to the instructions given by the child seat manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

Unfastening seat belts while the vehicle is in motion can lead to severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking or driving manoeuvres.

- Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary .

◁

In an emergency

Making you and your vehicle safe

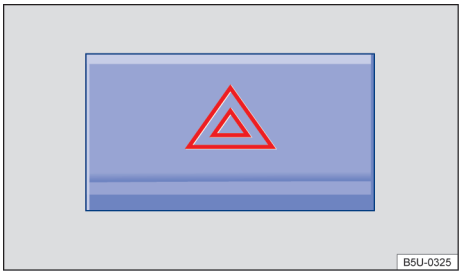


Fig. 37 On the upper portion of the centre console: warning lamp switch.

Observe any legislation concerning the safety of a broken down vehicle. For example, many countries stipulate that you have to switch on the hazard warning lights → page 44. ▶

Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following points in the order given→ ⚠:

1. Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and on a suitable surface → ⚠.
2. Switch on the hazard warning lights with the ⚠ → Fig. 37 switch.
3. Apply the handbrake → page 95.
4. Move the gear shift lever into the neutral position → page 89.
5. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition lock → page 86.
6. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle away from moving traffic and proceed to a safe position, e.g. behind the guardrail.
7. Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.
8. Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
9. Allow the engine to cool down and, if necessary, seek expert assistance.

When the hazard warning lights are switched on, all turn signals flash at the same time. The turn signals indicator lights ⇦ ⇨ and an indicator light at the switch ⚠ flash at the same time. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Lit indicator lights could indicate a change in direction or lane while towing or by activating the turn signal lever. The indicator lights are temporarily interrupted.

Examples in which hazard warning lights must be switched on:

– When traffic ahead suddenly starts moving more slowly or you reach the tail end of a traffic jam. This will warn vehicles behind you.
– When there is an emergency.
– When the vehicle breaks down.
– When being towed.

Always follow local regulations for the use of the hazard warning lights.

If the hazard warning lights are not working, use an alternative method of drawing attention to the broken down vehicle (according to applicable legal provisions).

Emergency brake lights - ESS (Emergency Stop Signal)

For vehicles with ESS function and anti-lock brake system (ABS), during sudden and continuous braking at speeds greater than 80 km/h, the brake light lamp may flash to warn cars coming in from behind.

If the braking manoeuvre is further extended, maintaining the same deceleration rate, the warning lights are automatically activated and flash when the vehicle reaches a speed lower than approximately 10 km/h. Upon resuming vehicle movement, warning lights are automatically deactivated.

Warning lamps may also be switched off via the ⚠ dash panel → Fig. 37 switch.

⚠ WARNING

Broken-down vehicles lacking due signalling increase the risk of accidents both for you and for other road users.

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe location. ark the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to lock all doors securely in an emergency. Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- Never leave unattended children or people with special needs in the vehicle with the doors locked. This may mean that they are locked in the vehicle in an emergency. Persons locked in the vehicle may be exposed to extremely high or low temperatures.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Always follow the instructions on the checklist and comply with applicable safety precautions.

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle so that parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel, etc. ▶

The vehicle battery will discharge if the hazard warning lights are left on over a long period of time – even if the ignition is switched off.

Whenever airbags are activated in accidents, warning lights may be automatically activated → page 36. ◁

Emergency equipment

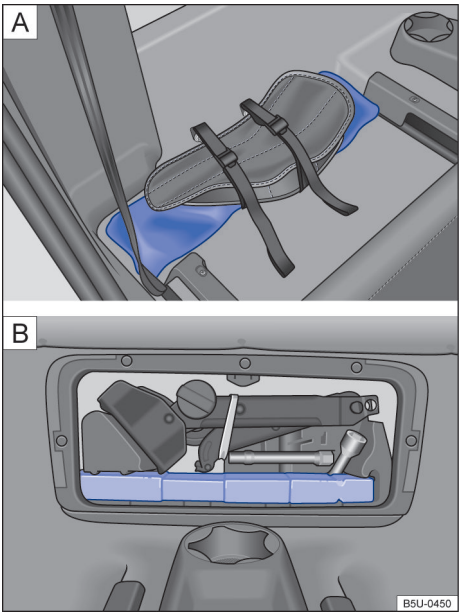


Fig. 38 A Behind the passenger seat: warning triangle. B On the rear seat floor: warning triangle - New Saveiro Extended Cab.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle's placement varies depending on the vehicle version and/or model.

The warning triangle may not be available in some export markets.

Fold the passenger seat backrest to access the warning triangle.

The warning triangle is located on the floor behind the passenger seat → Fig. 38 fastened to the vehicle toolkit.

In the *New Saveiro Extended Cab*, the warning triangle is located on the rear seat floor, secured behind the trim.

Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher may not be available for some export markets.

According to the vehicle version, the fire extinguisher support may be located in the footwell underneath the driver seat.

The fire extinguisher must correspond to the legal requirements, be always ready for use, and be regularly inspected (see the inspection seal on the fire extinguisher).

WARNING

Loose objects may be projected inside the vehicle in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, as well as during accidents, and may cause severe injuries.

- Secure the warning triangle in the respective straps.

The warning triangle must comply with applicable legal provisions in each country. ◁

Open and close

Vehicle key

Vehicle key functions

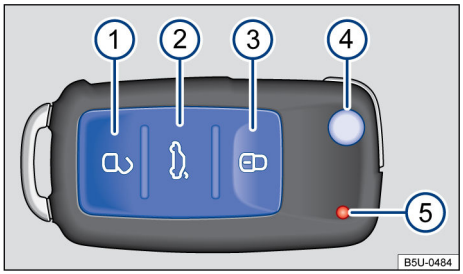


Fig. 39 Vehicle key with remote control.

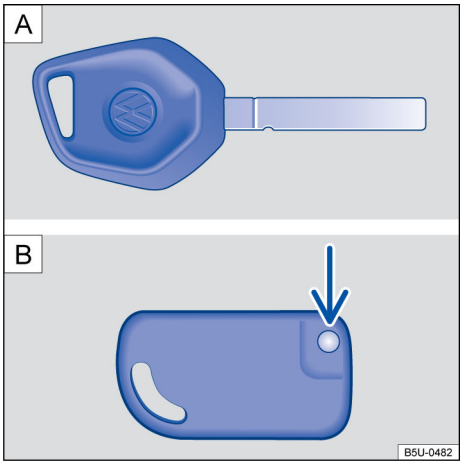


Fig. 40 A Mechanical key. B Foldable mechanical key.

Key for→ Fig. 39:

① Central locking button: unlock the vehicle.

② Unlock the boot lid: press the button. Only the boot lid is unlocked.

③ Central locking button: lock the vehicle.

④ Folding and unfolding the key bit.

⑤ Indicator lamp: flashes after pressing the button.

Key for→ Fig. 40:

A Mechanical key.

B Foldable mechanical key. Folding and unfolding the key blade (arrow).

Locking or unlocking the vehicle from the outside

– *Unlock:* press. Press and hold for convenience opening. **OR:** insert the vehicle key into the driver door lock cylinder and turn **counterclockwise**.

– *Lock:* press. **OR:** insert the vehicle key into the driver door lock cylinder and turn **clockwise**. Press and hold for convenience closing.

– *Unlocking the dropside with remote control:* press the button or → page 53 on the vehicle key. The rear lid is unlocked.

– *Unlock the dropside with the key:* unlock the driver's door and insert the key into the door cylinder and turn**counterclockwise**. The rear lid is unlocked.

The remote control key only locks and unlocks the vehicle when the battery has enough power and if the remote control key is located a few metres away from the vehicle.

– When the vehicle is locked, all turn signals will flash *once* as confirmation.

– When the vehicle is unlocked, all turn signals will flash *twice* as confirmation.

It is possible to enable the sound signal (horn) of the alarm activation/deactivation confirmation. For vehicles with Volkswagen Information System it is possible to enable/disable it through the instrument cluster. For the remaining vehicles go to a Volkswagen dealership to enable/disable the sound signal.

If the turn signals *do not* flash as locking confirmation, at least one of the doors or the boot lid is not closed.

The vehicle cannot be locked using the vehicle key if the driver door is still open. The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors or the boot lid a few seconds after unlocking the car with the remote control key. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake. ▶

WARNING

Improper or unsupervised use of the vehicle keys can cause severe accidents or injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. Children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and tailgate, start the engine, switch on the ignition and thus operate electrical equipment, such as the electric windows.
- Never leave unattended children or people with special needs in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. Depending on the time of year, for example, locked vehicles can be subjected to very high or very low temperatures. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.
- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock when the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

Every vehicle key contains electronic components. Protect the key from damage, moisture and excessive vibration.

Press the buttons on the vehicle key only if the corresponding function is actually needed. Pressing a button when the function is not required could lead to the vehicle being unlocked unintentionally or the alarm going off. This also applies even when it is believed to be outside the effective range. ◁

Replacing the battery

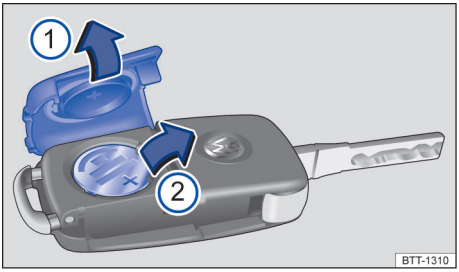


Fig. 41 Vehicle key with remote control: ① Open the battery case cover. ② Remove the battery.

Key for→ Fig. 41:

① Remove the cover.

② Remove the battery.

Volkswagen recommends having the battery replaced by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

– Unfold the vehicle key bit → page 45.

– Remove the cap on the rear side of the key → Fig. 41 ① as indicated by the arrow → ⓘ.

– Position the new battery as shown ② and push it into the battery compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow → ⓘ.

– Fit the cap as shown ① and push it onto the vehicle key housing in the opposite direction of the arrow until it engages.

DANGER

Should 20 mm diameter batteries or other lithium batteries be swallowed, severe or even fatal injuries may result within a short period of time.

- Always keep the vehicle key, key ring with batteries, spare batteries, round cells and other batteries out of the reach of children.
- Seek medical assistance immediately if you suspect someone has swallowed a battery.

NOTICE

- The vehicle key may be damaged if the battery is improperly changed.
- Unsuitable batteries may damage the vehicle key. Discharged batteries should only be replaced with new batteries of the same voltage rating, size and specification.
- Ensure that the battery is fitted the right way round.

The batteries contain toxic substances. This product cannot be disposed / discarded along with common trash. There are specific legal requirements regarding the disposal / discarding of used batteries. For your safety and convenience, Volkswagen recommends replacing vehicle batteries at a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. ◁

Synchronize the vehicle key

When it is impossible to unlock or lock the vehicle with the vehicle key, synchronize the vehicle key or replace the battery → page 46.

– Approach the vehicle with the remote control key.
– Press the locking or unlocking button once.
– Insert the key bit to be programmed into the driver door lock cylinder in up to 60 seconds.
– Next, turn the key towards the vehicle locking or unlocking direction.
– The system will be synchronized.

Synchronisation is only possible if the remote control key is previously programmed for the vehicle. ◁

Troubleshooting

Vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked

The remote control vehicle key may be temporarily disabled due to obstacles, bad weather conditions, weak battery, or excessive transmitters operating in the same frequency range near the vehicle (e.g. mobile phones or transmitters).

OR: if the buttons in the vehicle key with remote control or one of the central locking buttons are pressed repeatedly within a short period of time, the central locking system will switch off briefly to prevent overloading. The vehicle will then be unlocked. Lock the vehicle if necessary.

The indicator lamp does not flash

When the indicator lamp on the vehicle key does not flash, the vehicle key battery needs to be replaced → page 46.

Spare key

To acquire a key for the vehicle, the vehicle identification number is required.

Several vehicle keys may be valid for a vehicle.

The new vehicle keys can be obtained from your Volkswagen Dealership or from a qualified workshop. ◁

Central locking button and doors

Introduction

The central locking system will only work correctly when all doors are properly closed. The vehicle *cannot* be locked with the vehicle key with remote control or central locking button if the driver door is open.

If the vehicle is unlocked and not used for a long time (e.g. in your own garage) the vehicle battery could discharge or the engine may not start.

WARNING

Improper use of the central locking system could cause serious injuries.

- The central locking system locks all doors. Locking the vehicle from the inside may prevent the doors from being opened unintentionally and unauthorised persons from entering the vehicle. However, locked doors can delay assistance to passengers inside the vehicle in the event of an accident or emergency.
- Never leave unattended children or people with special needs in the vehicle. All doors can be locked from the inside using the central locking button. This may mean that people lock themselves in the vehicle. Persons locked in the vehicle may be exposed to extremely high or low temperatures.
- Depending on the time of year, locked vehicles can be subjected to extremely high or low temperatures. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, particularly for small children.
- Never leave anyone inside a locked vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety.
- Open and close doors and the dropside only when there is no one near its opening/closing range. ◁

Indicator lamp

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 47.

Only available in some versions equipped with the central locking system.

When locking the vehicle from the outside, the indicator light will flash on the instrument cluster display. ◁

Mechanical locking and unlocking

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 47.

Mechanical locking applies to vehicles *without* electrical locking systems.

– *Unlock the doors:* Insert the vehicle key in the driver door lock or front passenger door lock. Turn the key to the unlocking position. The locking pin moves up.
– *Lock the doors:* Insert the vehicle key into the driver door lock. Turn the key to the locking position. The locking pin moves down.

Doors may also be unlocked from inside the vehicle. The door is unlocked by pulling the door handle once.

It is possible to lock the doors from outside, without the key. For such, press the locking pin down and close the door. This locking method does not apply to the driver door, in order to prevent the key from being locked inside the vehicle.

From inside, it is possible to lock the doors through the locking pin. However, for vehicles equipped with alarm systems, the latter will not be activated.

If the driver door is open or not entirely closed (first-stage lock), the vehicle may not be locked.

⚠ WARNING

Locked doors help prevent unwanted individuals accessing the car from outside, for example, during a red light. This may also hinder the access of proper medical assistance during emergencies. ◁

Description of the central locking system

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 47.

The central locking system (not available in some versions) allows locking and unlocking the doors:

– From outside the vehicle with the mechanical vehicle key in the driver door, for vehicles without remote control → page 48.
– Using the remote control key in the driver door, when the remote control is not functional, in case of emergency → page 51.
– Remote control → page 45.
– From inside using the central locking button → page 49.

The passenger door can be locked manually if the remote control vehicle key or central locking system fails → page 50.

The driver door may be manually unlocked using the mechanical part of the vehicle key, in case the remote control vehicle key or central locking system fails.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The vehicle is automatically locked after reaching 20 km/h, in case it is still unlocked at such time.

If the buttons on the vehicle key with remote control (→ page 45, *Vehicle key*) or one of the central locking buttons → Fig. 42 are pressed repeatedly within a short period of time, the central locking system will switch off temporarily to prevent overloading. The vehicle will then be unlocked.

In vehicles without alarm system and with central locking system, whenever the vehicle is locked from the outside, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster will flash, indicating that the vehicle is locked. ◁

Central locking button

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 47.

Fig. 42 On the driver door: central locking button.

Vehicle with central locking system

Key for→ Fig. 42:

- Unlocks the vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle.

The central locking button functions with the ignition switched on or off.

If the vehicle is locked from outside with the remote control vehicle key or through the driver door with the mechanical key, the central locking button will not work.

Please note the following when using the central locking button to lock the vehicle:

- The anti-theft alarm system will **not** be activated.
- It is not possible to open the doors from *outside*, for example, when stopped at traffic lights.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from inside by pulling the door release handle. Eventually, you may have to pull the door release lever more than once.
- If any of the vehicle's doors is open, the central locking system will not be activated.

The vehicle will unlock automatically once the vehicle has come to a standstill and the vehicle key has been removed, if the automatic unlocking function is active → page 48.

Vehicle without central locking system

In vehicles without central locking system, the doors are locked by pressing the locking pin → page 48.

To open a door, pull the respective door handle or lift the locking pin.

The following applies when the vehicle is locked:

- It is not possible to open the doors from *outside*, for example, when stopped at traffic lights.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from inside by pulling the door release handle. Eventually, you may have to pull the door release lever more than once.
- If any of the vehicle's doors is open, the central locking system will not be activated. ◁

Manually locking or unlocking the driver door

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 47.

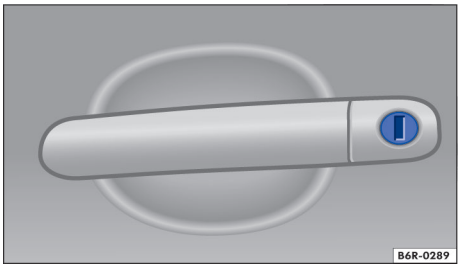


Fig. 43 Driver door handle with lock cylinder.

All doors are usually locked when manually locking the door. Only the driver door is manually unlocked.

- If necessary, unfold the vehicle key bit → page 45.
- Insert the key bit into the lock cylinder and lock/unlock the vehicle → Fig. 43. ◁

Manually locking the passenger door

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 47.

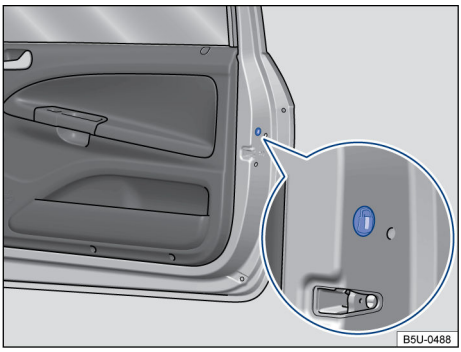


Fig. 44 Front part of the right-hand door: emergency vehicle locking, covered by a rubber seal.

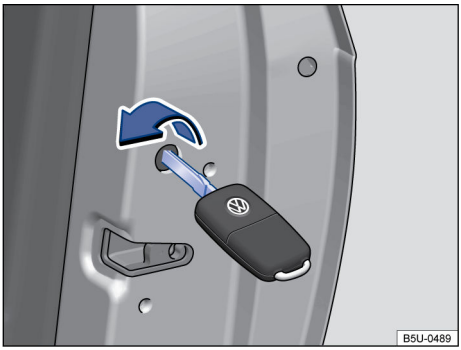


Fig. 45 Emergency vehicle locking with the vehicle key.

For vehicles with electric locking system, the passenger door may be manually locked. The anti-theft alarm system will **not** be activated.

- Open the door.
- Remove the rubber seal at the side of the door. The seal may be identified via the image of a padlock → Fig. 44.
- If necessary, fold the vehicle key bit out → page 45 or use the mechanical vehicle key.
- Insert the key bit into the slot → Fig. 45 and turn clockwise (towards vehicle) until reaching the stop.
- Secure the rubber seal and close the door completely.
- Check if the door is locked.
- The vehicle must be checked immediately by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

NOTICE

When carrying out an emergency locking procedure, remove and install parts carefully in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.

The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened from inside by pulling the door release handle. Eventually, it might be necessary to pull the door release handle twice → page 47.

The driver door may be locked or unlocked manually through the door cylinder → page 51, *Mechanically unlocking all vehicle doors (emergency opening)*. ◁

Troubleshooting

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 47.

Locking the vehicle after airbag deployment

The entire vehicle is unlocked when the airbags are triggered during an accident. Depending on the level of damage, the vehicle may be locked as follows after an accident:

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open and close one of the doors once.
- Remove the key from the vehicle and close → page 45.
- **OR:** press the central locking button in the driver door → page 49. ◁

Anti-theft alarm system

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 47.

The anti-theft alarm is activated automatically when the vehicle is locked using the remote control key or mechanical key. ▶

When does the system trigger an alarm?

The anti-theft alarm emits audible warning signals for about 30 seconds (per event) and visual warning signals for up to 5 minutes when the following non authorized actions are executed to the locked vehicle:

- Opening of a door mechanically unlocked with the vehicle key.
- A door is opened.
- The engine compartment cover is opened.
- The ignition is switched on using an invalid key.
- One of the windows is removed, broken or opened.
- Movement in the vehicle (in vehicles with interior movement monitoring system → page 51).

Switching off the alarm

Unlocking the vehicle with the unlocking button of the vehicle key.

OR: turning the ignition on with a valid vehicle key.

Mechanically unlocking all vehicle doors (emergency opening)

In case the remote control fails and the vehicle must be mechanically unlocked with the key bit, follow the instructions below:

- Turn the key in the driver door cylinder clockwise. All doors are unlocked (*valid for vehicles with central locking system and without alarm*).
- Open the driver door and switch on the ignition in up to 15 seconds, after which the alarm is sounded. By switching on the ignition, the immobilizer recognizes a valid key and deactivates the alarm. After this procedure, all doors and the engine compartment cover may be opened.

The alarm is triggered once again if after the initial trigger, a new attempt to enter the vehicle or a protected area occurs. For example, if the engine compartment cover is also opened after opening a door.

The anti-theft alarm system is **not** activated by locking the vehicle from inside with the central locking button.

When the driver door is mechanically unlocked with the key, only the driver door is unlocked, instead of the entire vehicle. Only after turning the ignition on will the passenger door be cleared - but not unlocked - and the central locking button activated (*Valid only for vehicles with central locking system and alarm*).

The anti-theft alarm will not function correctly if the vehicle battery is weak or discharged. ◁

Interior monitoring system

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 47.

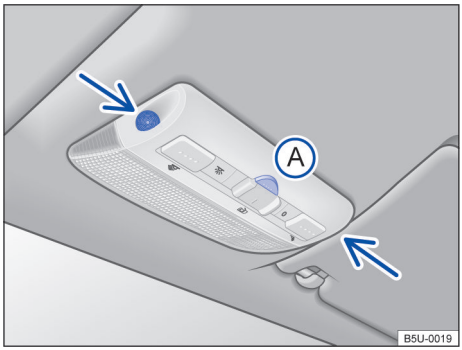


Fig. 46 On the roof console: sensors for the interior monitoring system and button Ⓐ to turn off the interior monitoring system.

Depending on the vehicle version, the interior monitoring system may not be available.

The interior monitoring system triggers the alarm with the vehicle locked in case movement is identified inside the vehicle. Both the sensor and receptor are located in the scan lamp set → Fig. 46 (arrows).

Switching on the interior monitoring system

Lock the vehicle using the remote control or mechanical vehicle key. When the anti-theft alarm is switched on, the interior monitoring system is also activated.

Switching off the interior monitoring system

- Remove the key from the ignition.
- Open the driver door. ▶

– Press → Fig. 46 Ⓐ. The indicator lamp lights up on the dash panel.
– Close all doors.
– The indicator lamp remains on for approximately 30 seconds or until the alarm system is activated. If the alarm is activated within 30 seconds, the indicator lamp will immediately start flashing.
– Lock the vehicle using the vehicle key in up to 20 seconds. The interior monitoring system is deactivated until the vehicle is locked.

For example, switching off the interior monitoring system while unsecured animals are left inside the vehicle for a short period ⚠ → page 47.

Monitoring must be deactivated each time the vehicle is unlocked, otherwise it would be activated the next time the vehicle is locked.

Risk of false alarm

Interior monitoring can only work properly if the vehicle is completely closed. Legal provisions must be followed. A false alarm can be triggered in any of the following circumstances:

– When one or more windows are completely or partially opened, since the alarm may be activated in such cases.
– If items such as loose pieces of paper and items attached to the interior mirror (e.g. air-fresheners) are left in the vehicle.
– If metallic items are left in the storage compartment (e.g. keys or coins).
– If a mobile telephone that is left in the vehicle vibrates.

NOTICE

Valid only for vehicles with the Volkswagen Information System: if the vehicle interior monitoring is switched off and the windows must be slightly opened, the following instructions must be followed:

- Deactivate the automatic window closing function through the **Convenience** submenu, in the **Auto Closing** option. The vehicle interior monitoring system must be switched off, otherwise the alarm may be activated.
- Volkswagen recommends only performing such procedure if necessary. ◁

Bed cover

Introduction

WARNING

Incorrect and unsupervised unlocking, opening or closing of the bed cover can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Open and close the bed cover only when there is no one near its opening range.
- After closing the bed cover, check to make sure that it is closed and locked correctly so that it does not open while the vehicle is in motion. The closed bed cover must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- Close and lock the bed cover and doors when the vehicle is not in use. Ensure that no one remains in the vehicle.
- Never leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle, especially when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the boot lid, trapping themselves inside. Depending on the time of year, locked vehicles can be subjected to extremely high or low temperatures. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, particularly for small children.
- Never leave unattended children or people with special needs in the vehicle. All doors can be locked from the inside using the central locking button. This may mean that people lock themselves in the vehicle. Persons locked in the vehicle may be exposed to extremely high or low temperatures.

NOTICE

Before opening the bed cover, please check that there is enough space to open and close the tailgate (e.g. when towing a trailer or when parked in a garage). ◁

Opening and closing the bed cover

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 52.

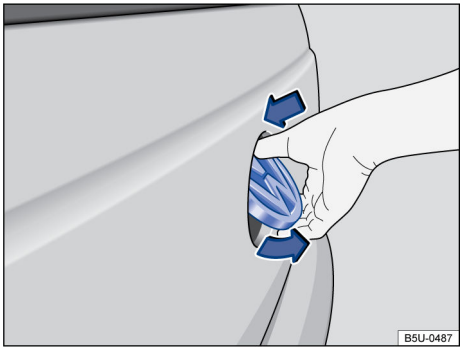


Fig. 47 Open the bed cover.

Locking and unlocking the dropside through the Volkswagen logo

– In vehicles with central locking system and remote control, press the button or in the vehicle key. The dropside can now be opened.
– In vehicles with a mechanical key, unlock the driver's door and insert the key into the door cylinder and turn **counterclockwise**. The rear lid is unlocked.
– Press the upper part of the Volkswagen logo with your thumb → Fig. 47 and insert your other fingers in the lower part of the logo, pulling it out. The dropside will unlock and positioned in place by the gas spring. Pull it down to open.

Close and lock the dropside

– Lift the tailgate upwards and press it until an audible clicking sound is heard on both sides → ⚠.
– In vehicles with central locking system and remote control, press the button in the vehicle key.
– In vehicles with a mechanical key, insert the vehicle key bit into the driver's door lock cylinder and turn **clockwise**.

⚠ WARNING

In vehicles with bed canvas, do not close the bed cover while hands are touching the upper cover edge, otherwise such procedure may cause injuries.

ⓘ NOTICE

The bed cover may be loaded with up to 150 kg distributed, when it is fully opened. When maximum loading is exceeded, the fastening cables may break or the bed cover may be damaged.

- Never close the bed cover by pulling the fastening cables; this may cause the cables to deform or damage the vehicle's paint work.

ⓘ NOTICE

For vehicles with bed canvas, the bed cover may be opened even while the canvas is installed. ◁

Bed canvas

Introduction

Passengers may not be transported in the luggage compartment → ⚠.

Assembling and disassembling the bed canvas

Volkswagen recommends assembling and disassembling the bed canvas at a qualified workshop. To assemble and disassemble the bed canvas, specific vehicle parts must also be disassembled. In addition, fastening screws must be tightened with a torque wrench. This requires specialized tools and technical knowledge. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect and unsupervised unlocking, opening or closing of the bed cover can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Open and close the bed cover only when there is no one near its opening range.
- After closing the bed cover, check to make sure that it is closed and locked correctly so that it does not open while the vehicle is in motion. The closed bed cover must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- Close and lock the bed cover and doors when the vehicle is not in use. Ensure that no one remains in the vehicle.
- Never travel in the bed. ▶

- Never leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle, especially when the bed cover is open. Children could climb into the bed and shut the cover, trapping themselves inside. Depending on the time of year, locked vehicles can be subjected to extremely high or low temperatures. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, particularly for small children.

NOTICE

The bed canvas may not be disassembled and assembled without due technical knowledge and special tools.

- Incorrectly assembling and disassembling the bed may damage the vehicle. ◁

Adjust or release the bed canvas

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 53.

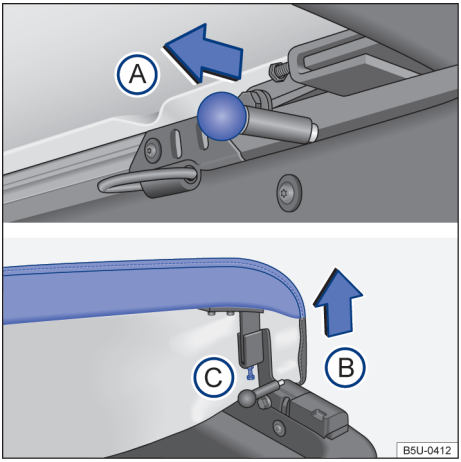


Fig. 48 Bed canvas stretching adjustment locks and bolt.

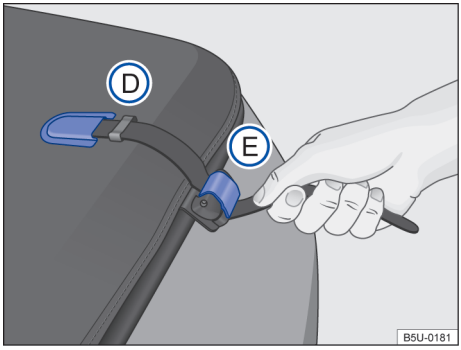


Fig. 49 Bed canvas attachment.

Depending on the vehicle version, the bed canvas may not be available.

Adjust the bed canvas stretching

– Open the tailgate to access the stretching screw and nut → page 52.
– Move the locking pin → Fig. 48 Ⓐ in the direction of the arrow, in both sides, simultaneously.
– Lift the canvas edge in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ.
– To adjust stretching, release the nut and tighten the bolt or release the bolt Ⓒ until reaching the desired stretching.
– Next, tighten the nut against the locking handle.

Release the bed canvas

– Open the tailgate to access internal bed cover fastening locks → page 52.
– Move the locking pin → Fig. 48 Ⓐ in the direction of the arrow, in both sides, simultaneously.
– Lift the canvas edge in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ.
– Remove the belt end from the housing → Fig. 49 Ⓓ, on the sides of the bed cover, and force the belt downwards to unlock the lock Ⓔ.
– Pull the strap from the upper region to remove it from the lock.
– Insert the strap edges into the housing Ⓓ to facilitate the bed cover retraction. ▶

⚠ WARNING

- Never transport or place cargoes over the bed canvas, otherwise it may lead to accidents and vehicle damages.
- Before driving, ensure that the bed canvas is fastened in place.

NOTICE

The bed cover may be open even with the bed canvas fully installed. ◁

Retract the bed canvas (variant 1)

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 53.**

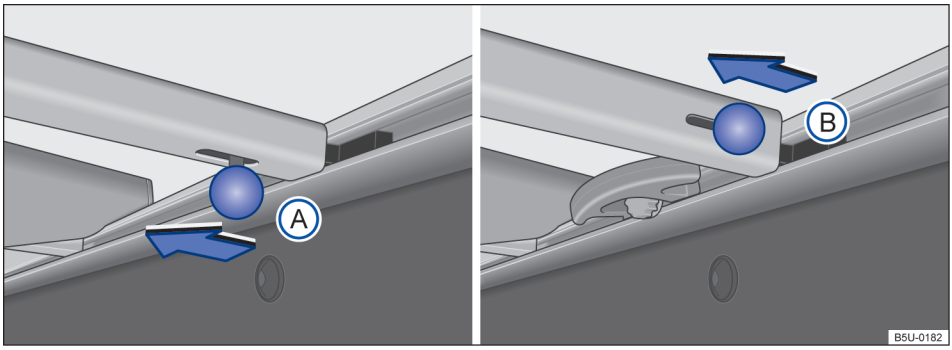


Fig. 50 Luggage compartment cross struts: Ⓐ vehicles with fixed strapping supports, Ⓑ vehicles with sliding strapping supports.

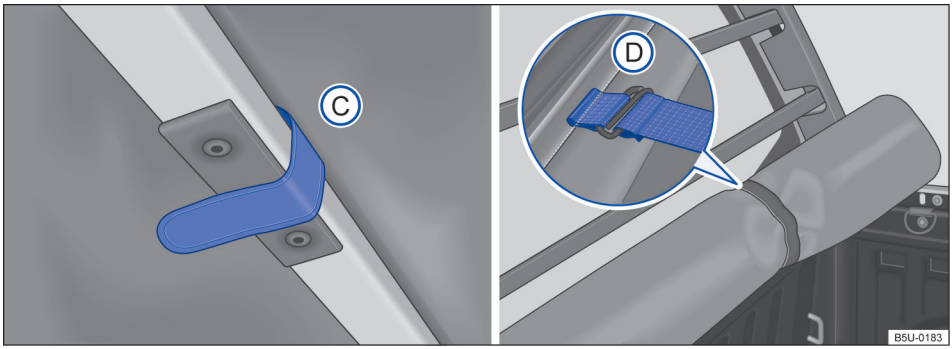


Fig. 51 On the bed: fastening strap and bed canvas properly retracted.

The bed canvas may be retracted to transport large volumes, as described below:

– Release the bed cover → page 54.

– Retract the canvas until the cross members are accessed.

– To remove the type Ⓐ or Ⓑ, move the locking pin in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 50. To remove the beam near the rear window, the fastening straps of the bed canvas → Fig. 51 Ⓒ must be released. ▶

– Place the cross members underneath the canvas and roll them allowing the external portion (waterproof) of the canvas to be visible.
– After fully retracting the canvas, secure it with the fastening straps Ⓓ.

WARNING

- When installing cross members, ensure that the members' edges are perfectly fitted into its respective housings.
- Before driving, ensure that the bed canvas is fully retracted and properly fastened in place by the straps. ◁

Retract the bed canvas (variant 2)

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 53.

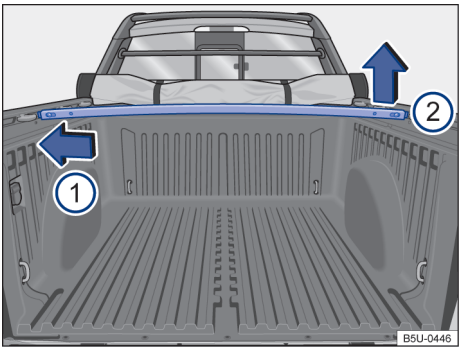


Fig. 52 Bed crossmembers - remove and install.

The bed canvas may be retracted to transport large volumes, as described below:

– Release the bed cover → page 54.
– Retract the canvas until the cross members are accessed.
– To remove, press the cross member on the left side in the direction indicated by the arrow → Fig. 52 ① and remove the cross member from its seat from the right ②.
– To remove the cross member near the rear window, the fastening straps of the bed canvas → Fig. 51 Ⓒ must be released, and repeat the same previous procedure to remove the cross member (when more than one cross member is available).
– Place the cross members underneath the canvas and roll them allowing the external portion (waterproof) of the canvas to be visible.
– Once the cross member is fully retracted, secure it using fastening straps → Fig. 51 Ⓓ.
– To reinstall the bed cover crossmembers again, proceed as described earlier in reverse.

WARNING

- When installing cross members, ensure that the members' edges are perfectly fitted into its respective housings.
- Before driving, ensure that the bed canvas is fully retracted and properly fastened in place by the straps. ◁

Windows

Opening or closing the windows

Manually opening or closing the windows

In vehicles *without electric windows*, activate the handle located in the internal door lining to open or close windows.

Electric opening or closing the windows

The buttons are located on the doors and centre console→ page 9

Opening the window: press the button. Closing the window: pull the button. **OR** for the centre console buttons, press the bottom part of the button to open and the upper part of the button to close the window.

Passenger door button

The button in the passenger door is equal and has the same function as the driver door button. There is only one button in the door's lining. ▶

One-touch opening and closing

The one-touch opening and closing function makes it possible to fully open and close the windows. Individual buttons do not have to be held down in order to do so.

For the one-touch closing function: pull the respective window's button upwards until reaching the second stage.

For the one-touch opening function: press the respective window's button briefly downwards until reaching the second stage.

Stopping the one-touch function: press or pull the button for the respective window once again.

Convenience opening and closing

Depending on the vehicle version and equipment items, the convenience opening/closing and automatic closing features may not be available, vary in functions, or only be partially available.

Depending on the vehicle version, windows can be opened and closed from the outside using the vehicle key with the ignition off:

– Press and hold unlock button or lock button on the vehicle key. All electric windows are opened or closed. **OR** insert the vehicle key into the driver door lock cylinder and hold turned **counter-clockwise** for all the electric windows to open or **clockwise** for all the electric windows to close.

– To interrupt the function release the locking or unlocking button **OR** release the key.

WARNING

Improper or unsupervised use of the electric windows can cause serious injuries.

- Electric windows must only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody and nothing is in their operating area.
- Never leave children or people who require special assistance unsupervised in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The windows can still be operated using the buttons for a brief period after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and passenger door are not opened.

NOTICE

Rain water can enter the vehicle interior and damage the vehicle.

The one-touch and roll-back functions will not work if there is a fault in the electric windows. Visit a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. ◁

Roll-back function for the electric windows

The roll-back function for the electric windows can reduce the risk of injuries when the windows are closing → ⚠. If the one-touch closing function (closing process) in a window does not work because it is stiff or obstructed, the window will automatically open again.

– Check to see why the window has not closed.

– Try to close the window again.

– After a few repeated activations of the roll-back function, the automatic window closing feature may be disabled.

– In order to re-establish the automatic window closing feature, follow the procedure → page 58.

– Please refer to a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop if the window still cannot be closed.

WARNING

Closing the electric windows without the roll-back function can lead to severe injuries.

- Always pay attention when closing electric windows.
- Ensure that nobody obstructs the path of the electric windows, especially if the roll-back function is not active.
- The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from being pressed against the window frame, resulting in injuries.

The roll-back function also acts with the window and sunroof convenience closing with the vehicle key. ◁

Opening or closing the rear vent window

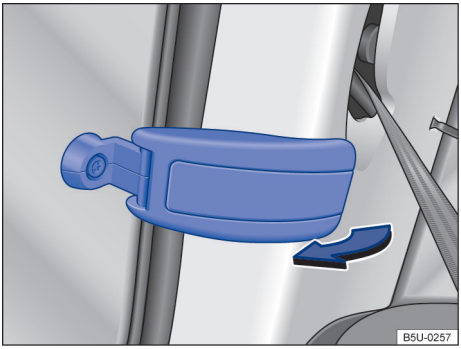


Fig. 53 Open the rear vent window.

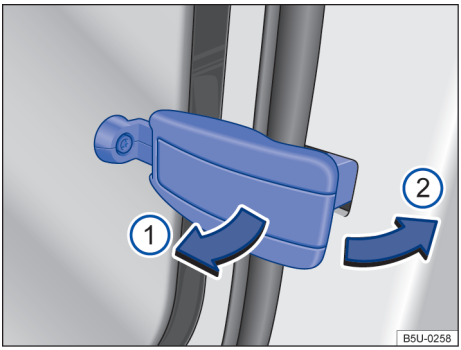


Fig. 54 Close the rear vent window.

Depending on the vehicle version, the rear vent window may not be available.

Open the rear vent window

– Pull the window detent lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 53.
– Press the detent lever outwards until the window is completely locked in place.

Close the rear vent window

– Pull the detent lever → Fig. 54 (1) inwards, in the direction of the arrow.
– Press the detent lever → Fig. 54 (2) backwards, in the direction of the arrow, until it is locked in place and the window is closed.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the rear vent window may cause severe injuries.

- The electric windows should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their operating area.

NOTICE

Rain water can enter the vehicle interior and damage the vehicle. ◁

Troubleshooting

Restoring one-touch opening and closing function

The one-touch opening and closing function is deactivated and must be restored if the vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged while the windows were not fully closed:

– Close all windows.
– Pull up the button for the window up and hold it in this position for at least one second.
– Release the button, then pull it up again and hold it in this position. The one-touch function is now ready for operation.

Repeat this process for other buttons with the one-touch function deactivated.

Restoring one-touch exterior closing function

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged while the windows were not fully closed, or also if after a few activations of the roll-back function, the one-touch opening and closing function with the vehicle key or remote control, from outside the vehicle, is deactivated and must be restored:

– Close all windows.
– Pull up the button for the window up and hold it in this position for at least one second. ◁

Steering wheel

Adjusting the steering wheel position

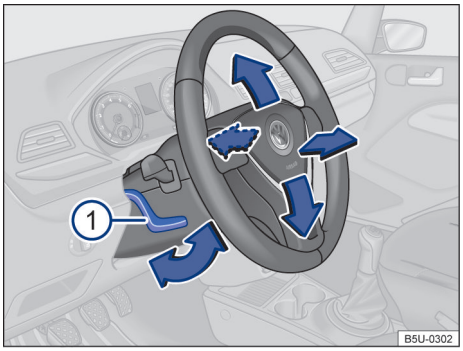


Fig. 55 Below and to the left of the steering wheel next to the steering column trim: steering wheel position adjustment lever.

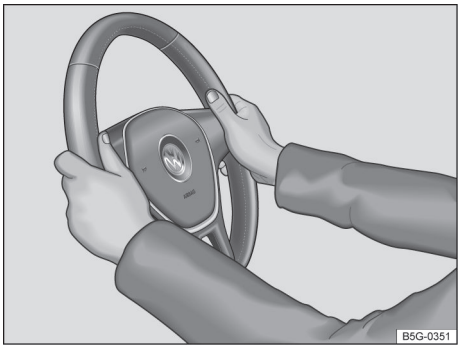


Fig. 56 On the steering wheel: 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions.

Adjust the steering wheel **before** setting off and only while the vehicle is stationary → ⚠.

– Adjust the proper distance between the driver and the steering wheel → page 26 using the driver seat controls → page 60.
– Push the lever → Fig. 55 (1) downwards and adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.
– Adjust the steering wheel position so as to be able to hold it by the outer rim *in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position* → Fig. 56 with both hands and slightly bent arms.
– Firmly press the lever upwards and place it in locking position until it is completely aligned with the steering column → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- After adjusting the steering column, always move lever (1) up so that it engages securely. This prevents the steering column from moving while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is in motion. If, while driving you conclude that a readjustment is necessary, safely stop the vehicle and adjust the steering wheel to the correct position.
- Failure to observe the above indications may compromise the driver's wheel turning movement.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the chest and not towards the face. This ensures that the driver front airbag provides maximum protection in the event of an accident.
- While driving, always keep both hands on the rim of the steering wheel, *at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position* → Fig. 56 to reduce injuries caused by a driver's frontal airbag deployment.
- Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way, such as in the centre of the steering wheel. If the driver airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries to the arms, hands and head.
- Failure to observe the above instructions have a direct negative influence on the drivers protection in case of a frontal collision of the vehicle. These recommendations are valid for both, vehicles *with* and *without* steering wheel position adjustment. ◁

Seats and head restraints

Front seat

Introduction

WARNING

Always adjust seats, seat belts and head restraints to their correct position before any journey and ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belt.

- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Adjust the driver seat in such a way that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel. Adjust the driver seat longitudinally in order for pedals to be fully pressed with slightly bent legs, and ensuring a minimum distance between the driver's knees and the dash panel of 10 cm. If your physical build makes it impossible to fulfil this requirement, you must contact a Volkswagen Dealership in order to implement any necessary modifications.
- Never travel with the backrest tilted far back. The further back the backrest is tilted, the greater the risk of injury caused by incorrect seat belt routing or an incorrect sitting position.
- Never travel with the backrest tilted forwards. When an airbag is triggered it could force the seat backrest backwards and injure vehicle occupants on the back seats.
- Adopt and maintain the greatest possible distance to the steering wheel and dash panel.
- You should always sit upright with your back against the seat backrest with the front seats properly adjusted. Do not position any body part too close where the airbags are fitted.
- The risk of serious injury is increased for passengers on the rear seat if they are not sitting upright because the seat belts are incorrectly positioned.

WARNING

Incorrect seat adjustment may cause accidents and severe injuries.

- The seats may only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary, since the seat could otherwise change position unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion, leading to a loss of vehicle control. Additionally, an incorrect seating position is adopted while adjusting the seat.
- Only adjust the height and tilt of the front seats when the area around the seat is clear.
- The area for adjustment of the front seats may not be restricted by any items. ◁

Manual front seat adjustment

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 60.

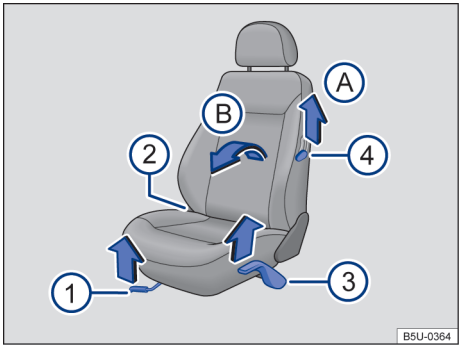


Fig. 57 On the front seat: controls.

All the possible controls are described below. According to the seat version the quantity of controls may vary.

Adjusting the seat position

Key for→ Fig. 57:

(1) Pull the lever to move the front seat front or backward. The front seat must be locked in place after releasing the lever.

(2) Release the seat backrest and turn the handwheel to adjust the backrest. ▶

③ *On the driver's seat only,* to adjust the seat height, move lever ③ in the direction of the arrow to adjust the height and release the lever. If necessary, repeat the procedure for correct adjustment.

④ Folding the backrest:

– *According to the version of the vehicle, the seat backrest folding lever may not be available.* Versions that come with the seat backrest folding lever: move the lever and fold the seat´s backrest. Lift the lever as indicated by arrow Ⓐ and double the backrest forward in the direction of arrow Ⓑ. When returning the backrest to its normal position ensure it is correctly locket in this position. ◁

Rear seat

Rear seat bench

Depending on the vehicle version, the rear seat may not be available.

The rear seat bench has clamping sleeves that secure the seat in place. The clamping sleeves may be damaged if the seat is disassembled, in which case they must be replaced.

Volkswagen does not recommend disassembling the seat bench or replacing the clamping sleeves without assistance. Contact a Volkswagen Dealership for more information.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly secured rear seat benches may cause severe injuries.

- Ensure the seat belt is not caught or damaged in the rear seat bench.
- No passengers must be transported in the rear seat bench if it is not secured in place. ◁

Head restraints

Introduction

The headrest adjustment and extension possibilities are described below. Ensure correct posture is adjusted → page 24.

All seats are equipped with head rests.

Correct head rest setting

Adjust the head rest so that its top edge is at the same height as the top of the head – but not lower than eye level.

Head restraint setting for shorter people

Push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then located underneath the top edge of the head rest. There may be a small gap between the head rest and backrest in the lowest position.

Head restraint setting for taller people

Push the head restraint up as far as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with incorrectly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- If a seat is occupied, the head restraint for that seat must be fitted and adjusted properly.
- Each vehicle occupant must adjust the head restraint to suit their body size, to help reduce the risk of neck injuries in case of accidents. At the same time, the top edge of the head restraint must be level with the top of the head, but no lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible.
- Never adjust the head restraint when the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

When removing or fitting head restraints, make sure that they do not hit the roof or front seat backrest. Otherwise, the roof and other vehicle parts could otherwise be damaged. ◁

Adjusting, uninstalling and installing the headrest

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 61.

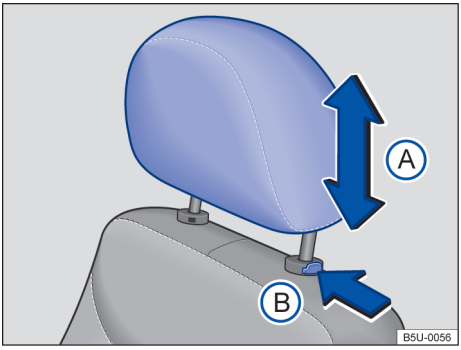


Fig. 58 Front head restraint: adjust, remove and install.

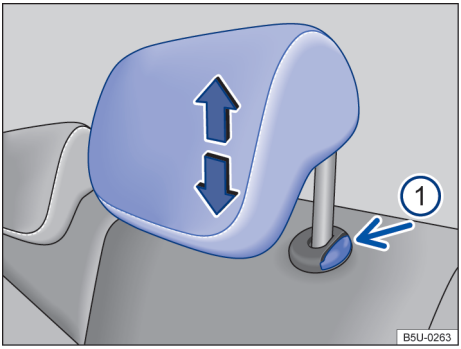


Fig. 59 Rear head restraint: adjust, remove and install.

Depending on the vehicle version, the rear seats head restraint may not be available.

Adjusting the front head rest height

– Push the head rest up or down in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 58 Ⓐ → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 61.
– The head restraint must click securely into position.

Adjusting the rear head rest height

– Move the headrest up or down in the direction of the arrow with the button → Fig. 59 ① held down → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 61.
– The head restraint must click securely into position.

Removing the head rest

– Push the head rest all the way up → ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 61.
– Press the button → Fig. 58 Ⓐ or → Fig. 59 ① in the direction of the arrow. Remove the head rest while pressing the button.

Fitting the front head rest

– Position the head rest correctly over the head rest guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
– Push the head restraint all the way down with button → Fig. 58 Ⓐ pressed.
– Adjust the head rest so that a correct sitting position can be assumed → page 62.

Fitting the rear head rest

– Position the head rest correctly over the head rest guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
– Press and hold → Fig. 59 ① to push the head rest downwards.
– Adjust the head rest so that a correct sitting position can be assumed → page 62. ◁

Lights

Turn signals

Switching the turn signals on and off

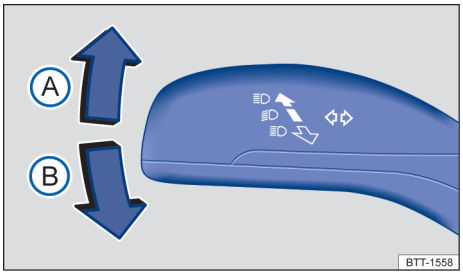


Fig. 60 On the left on the steering column: turn signal and main beam lever.

– Switch on the ignition.
– Move the turn signal and main beam lever from the centre position to the following position:

Ⓐ Right turn signal. ➡
Ⓑ Left turn signal. ⬅

– Place the turn signal and main beam lever into its basic position to switch the turn indicators off.

When the steering wheel returns to its normal position, after a curve, turn signals will be automatically switched off and the lever will return to the central position.

If the sound signal does not sound with the turn indicator turned on, visit your Volkswagen dealership or specialized workshop to have the vehicle checked.

Lane change flash

Briefly push the turn signal lever up or down until the pressure point is reached and then release it. The turn signal automatically flashes three times.

⚠ WARNING

Misuse or lack of use of turn signals, as well as forgetting to switch them on when appropriate, may confuse other road users. This could lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Changing lanes, overtaking and conversion manoeuvres must always be indicated appropriately by using the turn signals.
- Turn off turn signals after changing lanes or completing overtaking and conversion manoeuvres.

The turn signal will only work when the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off → page 42.

If one turn signal fails on the vehicle or on the trailer, the indicator lamp will start flashing approximately twice as fast. ◁

Driving lights

Lights, switching on and off

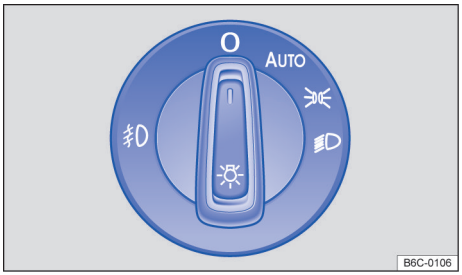


Fig. 61 Next to the steering wheel: light switch.

Observe any country-specific regulations when using vehicle lighting.

Depending on the vehicle version, the foglight may not be available.

Depending on the vehicle version, the **AUTO** function may not be available.

The long-range headlights is only valid for specific versions.

Turning the lights on

– Switch on the ignition.
– Turn the light switch to the corresponding position: ▶

AUTO Automatic activation of the driving lights: the driving lights are automatically turned on and off according to the brightness and weather condition → ⚠.

Side lights switched on. The icon on the light switch shines in green colour.

Dipped beam headlights switched off.

Turning the lights off

– Switch off the ignition.

– Turn the light switch to the corresponding position:

0 The lights are off.

Side lights switched on. The icon on the light switch shines in green colour.

Dipped beam off – the indicator light remains on while the vehicle key is in the ignition.

⚠ WARNING

The side lights are not powerful enough to illuminate the street and make your vehicle seen by other road users.

- Always switch dipped beam headlights on with low light, fog or poor visibility.
- A vehicle without rear lights on may not be seen by other drivers in darkness, during rainstorms or other poor visibility conditions.

Comply with all applicable legal provisions when handling the aforementioned lighting devices. ◁

Fog lights on/off

The indicator lamp in the light switch → Fig. 61 indicates that the fog light is switched on.

For vehicles equipped with fog light:

– Turn on the fog light : pull the light switch → Fig. 61 from position or until reaching the first position.

– To switch the fog lights off, press the light switch or move it into position **0**. ◁

Functions of the lights

*Depending on the vehicle version, the automatic driving light control (**AUTO**) may not be available.*

Automatic driving light control AUTO

The automatic driving light control is simply an ancillary system, which may not sufficiently recognize all driving conditions.

While the automatic driving light control is activated, low beams and lamps are automatically switched if the twilight sensor detects low lighting on the exterior environment, such as when crossing a tunnel during the day, or during night time. Whenever the vehicle is in an environment with intense solar lighting, with the light switch in position **AUTO**, low beams and lamps will be automatically switched off by the electric central system.

If the rotating light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lamp, instrument lights, and license plate lights will be switched on and off automatically under the following scenarios→ ⚠:

The twilight sensor is located next to the rain sensor → page 70.

If the automatic driving light control switches on headlights or fog lights, the low beam will also be switched on regardless of the ambient lighting.

Altered twilight sensor activation behaviour

The possible causes for damages and misinterpretations *in the sensitive surface area* (arrow) of the twilight sensor are, among others, are the following:

– Damaged windscreen wiper blades: water films or cleaning stripes due to damaged wiper blades can affect the exterior lighting sensor.

– Insects: the presence of insects could affect exterior lighting sensors.

– Salt grooves: salt grooves during the winter can affect exterior lighting sensors.

– Dust: dry dust, wax, glass lining (lotus effect), and detergent residues (car wash) may reduce the twilight sensor's sensitivity or even its effectiveness.

– Stickers and labels: the sensor region cannot be externally or internally covered; otherwise, the twilight sensor will not operate properly. ▶

Acoustic warnings if lights are not switched off

If the key is removed from the ignition cylinder and the driver door is opened, an acoustic alarm will sound if the light switch is in position ≫ or ≣D. This will remind you to switch off the lights as necessary.

Cornering light

Depending on the vehicle version, the cornering light may not be available.

In slow conversions or sharp curves, the cornering light is automatically switched on. The cornering light is integrated to the fog lights and is only switched on when driving below approximately 40 km/h.

Upon selecting the reverse gear, the cornering light may be switched on in both vehicle sides during a manoeuvre.

⚠ WARNING

Severe accidents may occur if the road is not adequately illuminated and if the vehicle or pedestrians are not visible.

- The automatic driving light control (**AUTO**) only switches on low beams upon lighting variations, and not under foggy conditions, for example.

In case of cold or damp weather, the lamp, as well as the rear lights and turn signals, may be temporarily fogged. This event is normal and does not affect the service life of the vehicle's lighting system. ◁

Turn on the main beam/long-range beam

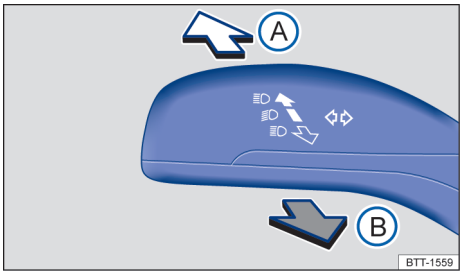


Fig. 62 On the left on the steering column: turn signal and main beam lever.

– Turn ignition and dipped beam on.
– Move the turn signal and main beam lever from the centre position to the following position:

Ⓐ Main beam on / long-range beam.
Ⓑ Operate the headlight flasher or turn the main beam off. The *headlight flasher* remains lit for as long as the lever is pulled.

With the main beams on or when flashing the headlights the blue indicator lamp lights up ≣D on the dash panel insert.

⚠ WARNING

Setting headlights too high, and the incorrect use of the main beam, could distract and dazzle other road users. This could lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always ensure that the headlights are adjusted correctly.
- Never use the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users could be dazzled.

The long-range beam works simultaneously with the main beam. The *main beam / long-range beam* can only be switched on if the dipped beam headlights are already on.

Due to the complexity of the long-range beam lamp replacement process, Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop for such purpose. ◁

Masking or switching over headlights

When driving in countries with opposite driving directions, the asymmetric dipped beam headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. Therefore, the headlights must be masked or switched over if you are driving abroad.

If applicable, mask certain areas of the headlight with thin layers or switch over the position in a specialized company. Additional information can be obtained from specialized companies. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose. ▶

The use of thin layers over the headlights is only allowed for short periods of time. Please contact a qualified workshop for a permanent alteration Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose. ◁

Troubleshooting

Turn signals

Left or right turn signals. The indicator lamp flashes twice as fast from normal when one of the vehicle's turn lights has burned out. Check vehicle lighting. ◁

Parking light

"Coming Home" and "Leaving Home" functions (orientation lighting)

With the orientation lighting, the area next to the vehicle is illuminated when leaving ("Coming Home") and when arriving at the vehicle ("Leaving Home"). For vehicles with light and rain sensors, the "Leaving Home" function is automatically controlled.

By activating the "Coming Home" or "Leaving Home" function, the dipped beam headlight and side lights are lit up as orientation lighting.

For vehicles *without* the Volkswagen Information System (I-System) and *with* the "Coming Home" and "Leaving Home" function, the latter is activated manually.

Vehicles not equipped with twilight and rain sensor - Manual mode

Turning the "Coming Home" function on:

– Switch off the ignition.
– Flash the main beam / long-range beam for approximately one second.
– The orientation lights are switched on after opening the driver door.

Turning the "Coming Home" function off:

– Automatically after the set lighting delay time has run out.
– **OR:** turning the ignition on.

In manual mode, the "Leaving Home" function only occurs if the "Coming Home" function has been previously activated.

Turning the "Leaving Home" function on:

– Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.

Turning the "Leaving Home" function off:

– Occurs automatically after the set switch-off delay.
– **OR:** turning the ignition on.

Vehicles equipped with twilight and rain sensor

Turning the "Coming Home" function on:

– Switch off the ignition.
– Flash the main beam / long-range beam for approximately one second.
– The orientation lights are switched on after opening the driver door.

Turning the "Coming Home" function off:

– Occurs automatically after the set switch-off delay.
– **OR:** when turning the light switch to position **0**.
– **OR:** turning the ignition on.

Turning the "Leaving Home" function on:

– Unlock the vehicle using the key with remote control, if the light switch is in position and the twilight sensor detects the **AUTO** and the twilight sensor detects the *darkness*.

Turning the "Leaving Home" function off:

– Occurs automatically after the set switch-off delay.
– **OR:** when turning the light switch to position **0**.
– **OR:** turning the ignition on.

For vehicles with the Volkswagen Information System (I-System), in the **Settings** menu, it is possible to set the duration of the orientation lights, as well as switching the function on or off.

The orientation lights time can be programmed in a Volkswagen Dealership or through the **Settings** menu in vehicles with the Volkswagen Information System. ◁

Head light range control

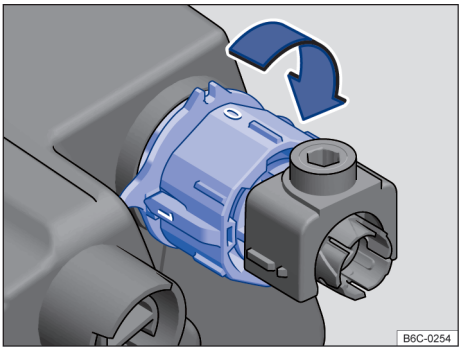


Fig. 63 In the engine compartment: headlight range adjustment switch.

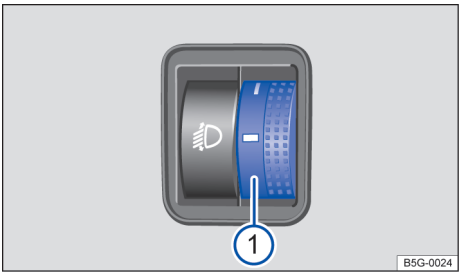


Fig. 64 Next to the steering wheel: control of the headlight range ①

Depending on the vehicle version, headlight range adjustment may vary.

With the headlight range control, the low beam light can be adjusted based on vehicle occupation and luggage compartment load conditions. Thereby the driver has the best possible visibility conditions without dazzling the opposite drivers.

Headlight range adjustment with switch in engine compartment:

The headlight range can be adjusted with the → Fig. 63 switch. Turn the switch in the direction of **(arrow)**:

0 Occupied front seats and empty luggage compartment.

1 All seats occupied and empty luggage compartment.

2 All seats occupied and loaded luggage compartment. **OR**

Only the driver seat occupied and fully loaded luggage compartment.

Headlight range adjustment with a switch next to the steering wheel:

The headlight range can be adjusted with the switch The headlight range can be adjusted with the switch→ Fig. 64:

– Occupied front seats and empty luggage compartment.

1 All seats occupied and empty luggage compartment.

2 All seats occupied and loaded luggage compartment.

3 Only the driver seat occupied and fully loaded luggage compartment.

WARNING

Heavy objects in the vehicle may affect headlight visibility and distract other road users. This could lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always adjust the light beam to current vehicle occupation and luggage compartment load conditions, in order to avoid dazzling other road users.

Interior lighting

Instrument and switch lighting

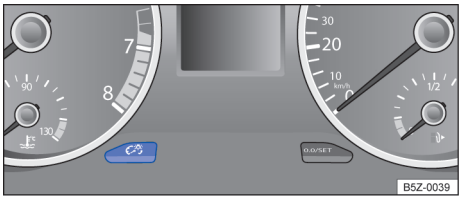


Fig. 65 On the instrument cluster: headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting button.

With the ignition switched on, the instrument and switch lighting range can be regulated, in three different levels, by pressing the → Fig. 65 button.

The switch is always in **ascending order**, returning to the first level after reaching the greatest intensity.

Dash panel lighting sensor

Depending on the vehicle's version, the dash panel lighting sensor may not be available.

The dash panel lighting sensor is located on the dash panel and is activated automatically.

The dash panel lights are activated automatically whenever the external light intensity increases (e.g. on sunny days). To avoid external light reflection on the dash panel.

The dash panel lights are switched off whenever the exterior light intensity decreases, and the low beam is turned off (e.g. when passing through tunnels). This will remind the driver to manually turn on the low beam. ◁

Interior and reading lights

Press the respective button:

0 Switch off internal lights.

Switch on internal lights.

Turn on the door contact switch (central position). Interior lights are switched on automatically by unlocking the vehicle, opening a door, or removing the key from the ignition cylinder. The lights are switched off a few seconds after closing all doors, locking the vehicle, or switching the ignition on.

/ Switches the respective reading light on or off.

If the vehicle doors are not closed and the switch is in position , the front interior lights are switched off after a few minutes. This prevents the battery from discharging.

The interior and reading lights are switched off after locking the vehicle or a few minutes after the key is removed from the ignition. This prevents the battery from discharging.

When airbags are triggered during an accident, interior lights may be automatically activated → page 36. ◁

Bed lighting

Fig. 66 On the centre console: bed lighting button.

Depending on the vehicle version, the bed lights may not be available.

Bed lights are switched on with the side light **with the side light switched on** and **the ignition switched off**.

With the bed lights switched on, the bed light is illuminated.

– To *switch on*: press the button → Fig. 66 on the dash panel.
– To *switch off*: press the button → Fig. 66 in the dash panel again, switch the side light off or switch the vehicle ignition on.

Upon switching the luggage compartment light on, a symbol will appear in the respective button. ◁

Visibility

Windscreen wiper and washer

Windscreen wiper lever

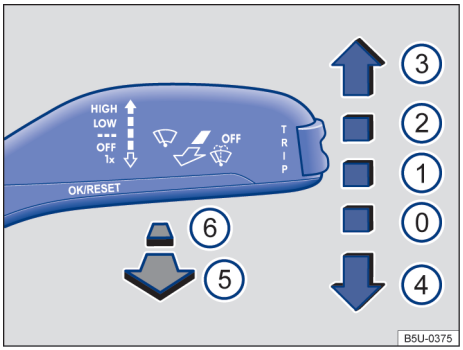


Fig. 67 Windscreen wiper / washer controls.

move the windscreen wipers lever to the desired position→ ⓘ:

(0) **OFF** Windscreen / rear window wipers switched off.

(1) Interval wipe for the windscreen.

(2) **LOW** Slow wipe.

(3) **HIGH** Fast wipe.

(4) **1x** touch wipe – brief cleaning.

(5) The windscreen washer system is active while the lever is pulled.

(6) **OFF** Washer system switched off.

WARNING

In winter temperatures, the windscreen washer system without sufficient antifreeze could freeze the windscreen and compromise driver visibility.

- In winter temperatures, only use windscreen wipers with sufficient antifreeze.
- Never use the windscreen washer system at winter temperatures before the windscreen has been heated by the ventilation system. The antifreeze mixture may otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict vision.

WARNING

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Windscreen wiper blades should therefore always be changed if they are damaged or worn.

NOTICE

If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will resume operation from the same position after the ignition is switched back on; however, in this condition (ignition switched off while windscreen wipers were switched on), the windscreen wipers return to the default position. Ice, snow, and other obstacles on the window could damage the windscreen wipers and the windscreen wiper motor.

- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- Carefully release the frozen windscreen wiper blades from the windscreen. Volkswagen recommends using an antifreeze spray for such activity.

NOTICE

Do not switch the windscreen wipers on if the window is dry. Otherwise the window may be damaged.

NOTICE

In icy conditions, always check if the windscreen wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the windscreen wipers!

The windscreen wipers will only work when the ignition is switched on.

The windscreen wiper interval wipe operates according to the vehicle's speed. The faster the vehicle, the faster the windscreen wiper interval wipe. ◁

Rain sensor

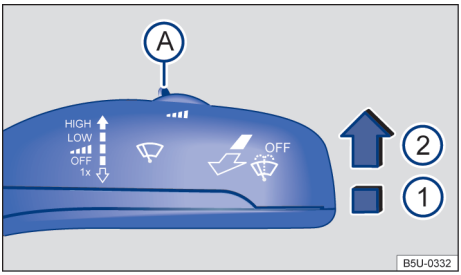


Fig. 68 Windscreen wiper lever: adjust rain sensor sensitivity Ⓐ.

Depending on the vehicle version, the rain sensor may not be available.

The activated rain sensor automatically controls windscreen wiper intervals according to rain intensity → ⚠. The rain sensor sensitivity may be manually adjusted. Manual wiping → page 69.

Move the lever into the desired position→ Fig. 68:

① Deactivated rain sensor.

② Active rain sensor – automatic wiping, if necessary.

Ⓐ Adjust the rain sensor sensitivity:

- Turn the switch to the right – high sensitivity.
- Turn the switch to the left – low sensitivity.

After switching the ignition off and on, the rain sensor will resume operation if the windscreen wiper lever is in position ②.

Altered rain sensor activation behaviour

The possible causes for damages and misinterpretations *in the sensitivity surface area* → Fig. 70 of the rain sensor are among others the following:

- Damaged windscreen wiper blades: water film or wiping stripes due to damaged wiper blades may extend the activation period, reduce wiping intervals, or affecting quick continuous wiping.
- Insects: the presence of insects may activate automatic wiping.
- Salt: during winter time, salt grooves on the window may cause extremely long wiping patterns until the window is nearly dry.
- Dust: dust, wax, glass lining (lotus effect), and detergent residues (car wash) may reduce the rain sensor's sensitivity, eventually reducing its speed or effectiveness.
- Cracks on the windscreen: a rock impact over the windscreen will activate a wiping cycle if the rain sensor is activated. After that, the sensor detects the reduced sensitivity surface and adjusts. According to the rock's impact area, rain sensor activation behaviour may be affected.
- Stickers and labels: the sensor region cannot be externally or internally covered; otherwise, the automatic lighting functions and twilight sensor will not operate properly.

⚠ WARNING

The rain sensor may not sufficiently detect rain and fail to activate the windscreen wipers.

- If necessary, manually activate the window wipers whenever the rain affects visibility.

Regularly clean the sensitive surface of the rain sensor and check the windscreen wiper blades for damages.

A glass-cleaning product, such as alcohol, is recommended to remove wax and polishing residues from the windows. ◁

Mirrors

Introduction

In order to ensure safety, the driver must properly adjust exterior and interior mirrors before driving → ⚠.

Drivers are able to notice traffic movements behind them and adjust driving behaviours accordingly using the exterior and interior mirrors. There are some areas to the side and behind the vehicle that cannot be seen through the exterior and interior mirrors. Such areas are called blind spots. There may be other vehicles, pedestrians and objects in blind spots. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting exterior and interior mirrors while driving may distract the driver. This could lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Only adjust exterior and interior mirrors while the vehicle is stationary.
- When parking, changing lanes and during overtaking or conversion manoeuvres, always observe the vehicle's surroundings, since other vehicles or objects may be located in blind spots.
- Always ensure that the mirrors are properly adjusted and that rear visibility is not limited by misting or other objects.

Interior mirror

🕮 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 71.

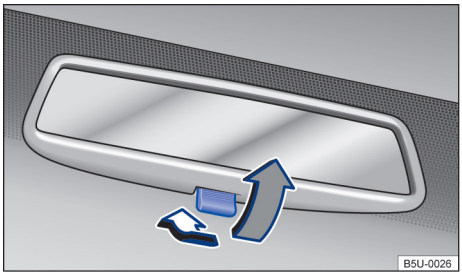


Fig. 69 On the windscreen: manual anti-dazzle interior mirror.

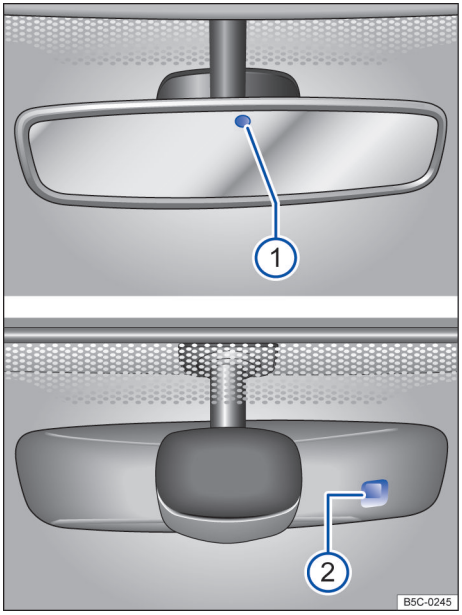


Fig. 70 On the windscreen: automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror.

The driver must adjust the interior mirror so that he/she can see clearly through the rear window.

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

– Day position: the lower mirror edge lever points towards the windscreen.
– Night position: pull the lever → Fig. 69 (grey arrow) to avoid glare from the headlights of vehicles travelling behind.

Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

Depending on the vehicle version, the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror may not be available.

When the ignition is turned on the sensors measure the light incidence. There are 2 sensors in the interior mirror, one that measures the incidence of light from *the front* → Fig. 70 ① and the other the light incidence from *behind* ②. According to the measured results the internal mirror is automatically darkened.

When the light incidence detected by the sensors is compromised or interrupted, the interior mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function may malfunction.

The automatic anti-dazzling is deactivated when engaging the reverse gear. ▶

Do not place external navigation devices on the windscreen or next to the interior mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- Interior mirrors should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary, in order to prevent the driver from being distracted.
- Rear visibility is reduced when using mirrors in the anti-dazzle position.
- The navigation device display's light may compromise proper operation of the interior mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function, potentially leading to severe injuries and accidents.

Visibility is hindered by using interior mirrors in the night position. ◁

Exterior mirrors

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 71.

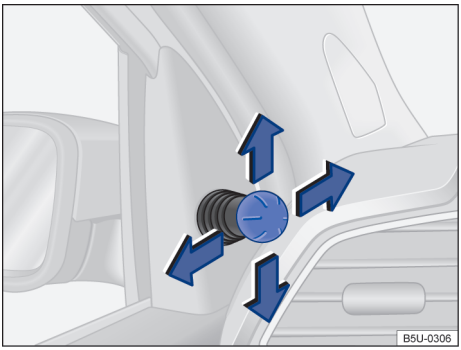


Fig. 71 On the front doors: setting knob for the mechanical exterior mirrors.

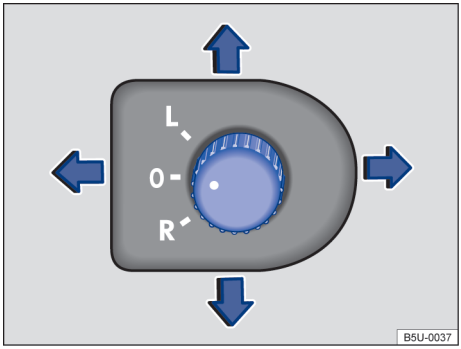


Fig. 72 On the driver door: setting knob for the electric exterior mirrors.

Exterior mirrors

– Operate the adjustment knob on the trims of the front doors → Fig. 71.

Electric exterior mirrors

– Switch on the ignition.
– Rotate the rotary knob in the driver door until reaching the desired icon → Fig. 72.
– Move the rotating knob forward, backward, to the right or to the left, as indicated by the arrows, to adjust the exterior mirror.

L Adjusting the left exterior mirror.

R Adjusting the right exterior mirror.

0 Neutral position. The exterior mirrors cannot be adjusted and all functions are disabled.

Store right-hand exterior mirror adjustments for reverse gear (tilt down)

– Switch on the ignition.
– Turn the rotary knob to position **R**.
– Selecting reverse gear.
– Adjust the right exterior mirror in order to allow proper visibility of kerb edge, for example.
– The adjusted mirror position is automatically stored.

When the reverse gear is disengaged, the right-hand mirror returns to front driving conditions.

To switch off the tilt down function when selecting reverse gear, the rotary control must be moved to **L** or **0**. ▶

Exterior mirrors can be manually folded (rotated) inwards and outwards. The use position is defined by a clear locking position in both sides (left and right).

WARNING

Exterior mirrors should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary, in order to prevent the driver from being distracted.

WARNING

Careless folding of exterior mirrors may cause injuries.

- Fold exterior mirrors inwards or outwards only when no one is in its operation range.
- Handle with care in order to prevent fingers from getting stuck between the exterior mirror and the mirror frame, while the mirror is moving.

WARNING

Inaccurate assessment of the distance of vehicles coming from behind may cause severe accidents and injuries.

- The domed surfaces of exterior mirrors (convex) increase visibility and make objects appear smaller and more distant.
- Using the left and right-hand exterior mirrors to assess the distance of vehicles coming from behind when changing lanes is inaccurate and may cause severe accidents and injuries.
- Whenever possible, use the internal mirror to ascertain the distance of vehicles coming from behind or the distance to other objects.
- Ensure that rear visibility is always unobstructed.

NOTICE

Always fold in exterior mirrors in automatic washing systems.

In case of failure, electric exterior mirrors may be manually adjusted by pressing the edge of the mirror surface. ◁

Sliding headliner

Sun visors

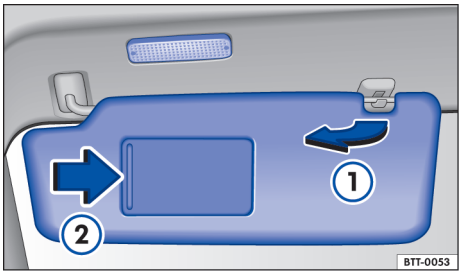


Fig. 73 Sun visor.

Depending on the vehicle version, the sun visor may contain different combinations, containing or not: lighting, mirror cover and vanity mirror.

Possible positions for the driver and passenger sun visors:

– Folded down over the windscreen.
– Remove from the bracket and turn over towards the door → Fig. 73 (1).
– Pulled towards the door in a posterior longitudinal direction.

Vanity mirrors

A vanity mirror may be located behind a cover on the folded down sun visor. When you open the cover → Fig. 73 (2) a lamp lights up.

The lamp will go out when the vanity mirror cover is pushed back or the sun visor is folded back up.

WARNING

Sun visors folded downwards may reduce the field of vision and decrease safety.

- Sun visors and sunblind should always be replaced in their holder if they are not being used.

NOTICE

Handle sun visors and vanity mirror covers carefully in order to avoid damages. ◁

Windscreen

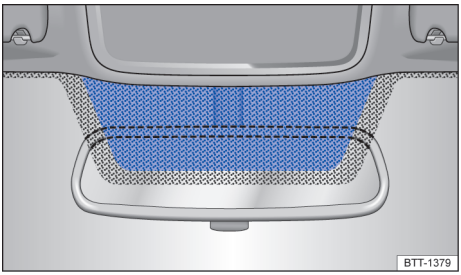


Fig. 74 Cross-linked windscreen with communication window (blue surface).

Windscreens feature a cross-linked screen to protect the eyes against sun rays when using the interior mirror. There is a non-coated area above the interior mirror (communication window) above the interior mirror → Fig. 74 which ensures that electronic accessories, for example remote controls, can function properly.

The area must not be covered either from the outside or the inside, nor should any stickers be applied to this area as this could cause a fault in the electronic components. ◁

Heating and air conditioning

Heating, ventilating, cooling

Introduction

The following equipment may be installed in the vehicle:

The **ventilation and heating system** heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The ventilation and heating system does not cool.

The **air conditioner** cools and dehumidifies the air. They work best when all windows are closed. In case of accumulated heat in the vehicle interior, ventilation may speed the cooling process.

WARNING

Poor visibility through all windows increases the risk of collisions and accidents, which can lead to severe injuries.

- Always ensure that all windows are free of ice, snow and mist in order to have good visibility.
- Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows as quickly as possible, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature. Do not start your journey until you have good visibility.
- Always ensure that the heating and fresh air system or air conditioning and rear window heating system are used properly in order to guarantee proper exterior visibility.
- Never use the air recirculation mode for extended periods. If the cooling system is switched off, the windows can mist up very quickly in air recirculation mode and reduce visibility considerably.
- Always switch off the air recirculation mode if it is not required.

WARNING

Stale air can quickly cause tiredness and lack of concentration in the driver, which in turn can cause collisions, accidents and severe injuries. ▶

- Never leave the blower off for extended periods and never use the recirculation mode for extended periods, since this prevent fresh air from entering the vehicle.

NOTICE

- Switch off the air conditioning system if you suspect that it has been damaged. This can help to prevent further damage. The air conditioning system must be checked by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.
- Repairs to the air conditioning system require specific knowledge and tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

If the cooling system is switched off, the outside air that is drawn into the vehicle is not dehumidified. To prevent the windows from misting over, Volkswagen recommends leaving the air conditioning (supercharger) switched on. For such, press the button A/C. The indicator lamp in the button must light up.

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows as quickly as possible, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure heating and cooling is not impaired, and to prevent the windows from misting over. ◁

Air conditioning controls

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 74.

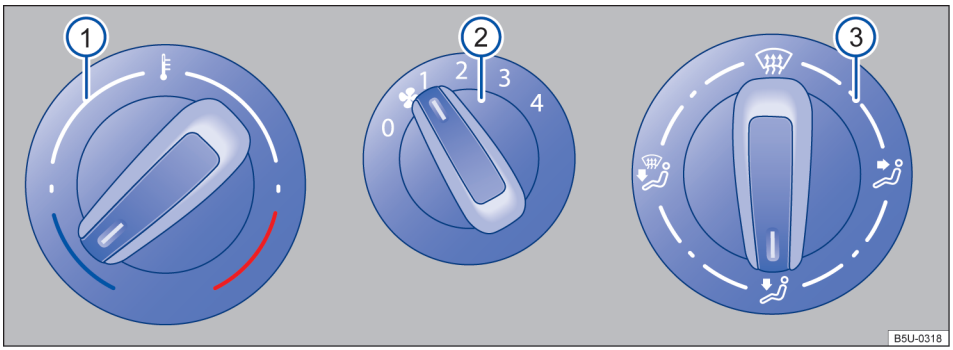


Fig. 75 Ventilation and heating system controls.

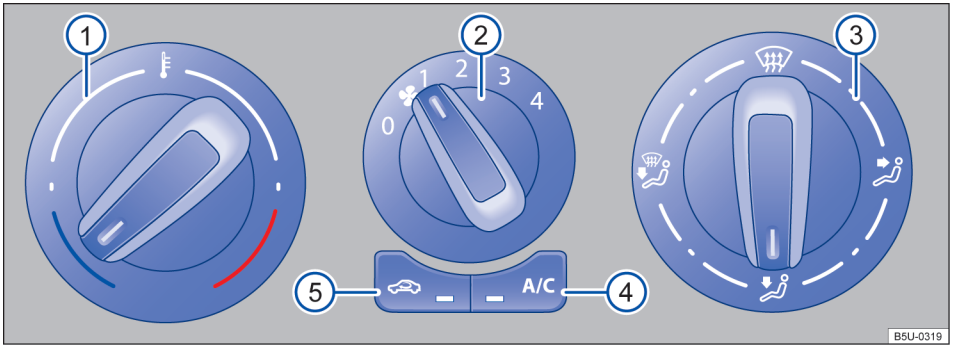


Fig. 76 Air conditioning controls. ▶

Some functions and buttons are version dependent and depend o the type of system fitted.

Turning off

– *Heating and ventilation system:* turn the blower knob to level **0** → Fig. 75 ②.
– *Air conditioner:* rotate the blower regulator to level **0** → Fig. 76 ②.

A/C – Cooling mode

– Press the A/C button to turn the cooling on and off.

In cooling mode the air is dehumidified.

■ / ■ – Temperature

– *Heating and ventilation system:* turn the left knob → Fig. 75 ① to adjust the temperature.
– *Air conditioning:* turn the left knob → Fig. 76 ① to adjust the temperature.

– Blower

– *Heating and ventilation system:* turn the blower knob → Fig. 75 ②.
– *Air-conditioning:* rotate the blower regulator → Fig. 76 ②.

– Air recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, no fresh air enters the interior of the vehicle → Fig. 76.

– Press .

Air distribution

– *Heating and ventilation system:* rotate the right regulator → Fig. 75 ③ to the desired position.
– *Air-conditioning:* rotate the right regulator → Fig. 76 ③ to the desired position.

– Air distribution to the upper body area.

– Air distribution to the footwell area.

– Air distribution to the windscreen and footwell area.

– Air distribution to the windscreen.

– Defrost function

The defrosting function eliminates the frost from the windscreen.

– *Heating and ventilation system:* defogger. Air distribution to the windscreen and side windows in the exterior mirror area
– *Air conditioning:* defogger. Air distribution to the windscreen and side windows in the exterior mirror area. Press A/C and increase the strength of the blower in order to defrost the windscreen as fast as possible.

– Rear window defrost function

– Press the button to turn the rear window heating on and off with running engine.
– The indicator lamp lights up on the button while the heating is on.
– Press the button again to switch off the rear window heating manually.

The rear window defroster is turned of automatically after about 10 minutes.

Fast cooling inside the vehicle

In order to obtain fast cooling inside the vehicle, follow the instructions below:

– Set the temperature knob ① completely to the left.
– Set the air recirculation controller ③ into position .
– Turn the blower knob ② to the maximum level 4.
– Press the button A/C to switch the cooling system on.
– If the vehicle is exposed to the sun for extended periods, open the front door windows partially or completely for a brief amount of time (1 to 3 minutes), in order to remove the hot air mass inside the vehicle.
– Close the windows and press to switch the air recirculation mode on.

NOTICE

To prevent damages to the rear window defroster, no sticker should be stuck on the inside on the filaments.

After the window is cleared, the function must be switched off. Lower current consumption also decreases fuel consumption.

If the air conditioner and air recirculation mode are turned off manually, the system will not automatically turn them on next time the blower is switched off and on again. The system ▶

will only start working automatically again after the temperature switch is removed from the full left position and placed back into this position.

Ventilation and heating system operating instructions

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 74.

Temperature

For vehicles equipped with heating and ventilation system, the internal vehicle temperature must not be lower than the exterior air temperature, since the heating and ventilation system is unable to cool air.

Settings for optimal road visibility

– In vehicles with heating system, turn the temperature knob → Fig. 75 ① completely to the right, to the maximum heating setting.
– Set the air recirculation controller ③ into position .
– Turn the blower knob ② to level 3 or 4.

Keeping the windscreen and side windows defrosted

– In vehicles with heating system, set the temperature control ① into the required heating position to ensure proper defrosting.
– Set the air recirculation controller ③ into position .
– Set blower ② to one of the 4 stages.

In vehicles without heating, the blower button is located on the left-hand side, in the temperature button position. ◁

In vehicles without heating, the blower button is located on the left-hand side, in the temperature button position. ◁

Air recirculation mode

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 74.

General notes

The air recirculation mode prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

If the outside temperature is very high, the air recirculation mode must be selected for a short period of time to help cool off the vehicle interior faster.

The air recirculation mode must be activated if the air conditioning system is switched on. Windows may quickly fog if the air conditioning system is switched off.

– The air recirculation mode is automatically switched off if the air distribution knob is set to position .

Switching air recirculation mode on and off

Switch on: press ; the indicator light will light up.

Switch off: press ; the indicator light will go out.

NOTICE

In vehicles with an air conditioning system, do not smoke when the air recirculation mode is switched on. The smoke drawn into the cooling system can leave a residue on the evaporator and the dust and pollen filter, producing a permanent unpleasant odour. ◁

Vents

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 74.

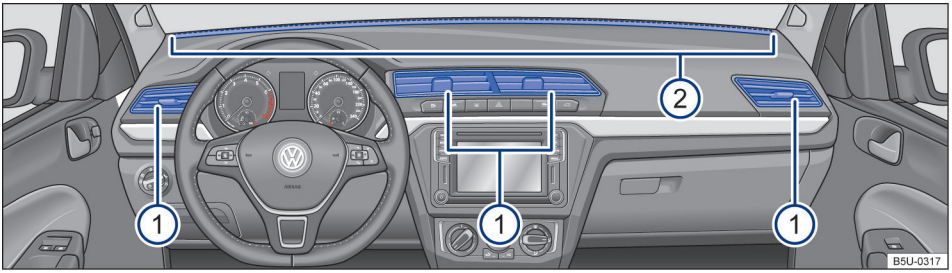


Fig. 77 On the dashboard: vents.

Air vents

The vents should be left open to ensure that the vehicle interior is sufficiently heated, ventilated and cooled.

- Press the upper part to open the vents (1).
- Adjust the direction of the air flow by moving the grille.
- Press the lower part to close the vents.

Other non adjustable vents can be found on the dash panel → Fig. 77 (2) and in the footwell areas.

NOTICE

Do not place any food, medicine or any other heat-sensitive items in front of the vents. Heat-sensitive food, medicine and other items could be either damaged or rendered useless.

The air from vents runs through the vehicle interior and leaves through the exhaust valves located on the rear wings, underneath the bumper. ◁

Troubleshooting

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 74.

The following hints and operational instructions help with the correct use of the system.

The cooling system for the vehicle interior only works when the engine is running and the blower is switched on.

The air conditioning system operates most effectively with the windows closed. However, if the vehicle has heated up after standing in the sun for some time, the air inside can be cooled more quickly by opening the windows for a short time.

Why does the cooling system turn off automatically or cannot be turned on?

- The engine is not running.
- The blower is switched off.
- The air conditioning system fuse has blown.
- Room temperature is below approximately +2 ℃.
- The supercharger has been temporarily switched off because the coolant temperature is too high.
- There is a fault on the vehicle. The air conditioning system must be checked by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

Settings for optimal road visibility

Switching the cooling system on not only reduces the temperature of the vehicle interior, but also the humidity, thus preventing windows from misting.

- Move the air recirculation switch → Fig. 76 (3) into position, in this position, the air recirculation is automatically switched off.
- Turn the blower knob (2) to level 3 or 4. ▶

– Press the button A/C to switch the cooling system on. The indicator lamp lights up.
– Set the temperature knob (1) into the required position.

Dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter with activated charcoal reduces the level of particles in the outside air entering the vehicle.

The pollen and dust filter needs to be regularly replaced to keep the air conditioner's efficiency unimpaired. Case the vehicle is frequently used in heavily polluted environments, the filter should be replaced between servicing events → page 192.

Water vapour underneath the vehicle

If the outside humidity and temperature are high, **condensed water** may drip off the cooling system's evaporator and form a pool of water underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak!

The air conditioning supercharger consumes engine power during cooling, thus contributing to increased fuel consumption. To reduce cooling time to a minimum, observe the following instructions:

- If a vehicle stationary under the sun is too hot, open the doors and windows for a few seconds in order to let the hot air out.
- Ensure that external hot air does not enter the vehicle, for example, through an open window, while the air conditioning is switched on.
- If it is possible to reach the desired temperature without switching the air conditioning on, only use the ventilation system.

The windscreen might condense after the engine is started due to the residual humidity in the air conditioning system. Turn on the defrost function to clear the windscreen as fast as possible.

In some versions, for greater overtaking safety, the air conditioning system is switched off for a few seconds while the gas pedal is fully depressed. This feature allows the engine to reach maximum performance during such period.

When arriving at destination (about 2 minutes before), turn the air conditioner off leaving only the ventilation operating. This helps reducing the humidity in the evaporator, reducing the appearance of unpleasant odours in the interior of the vehicle. ◁

Driving

Driving guidelines

Pedals

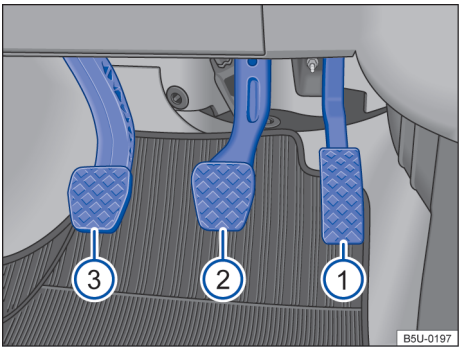


Fig. 78 In the footwell area: pedals.

Key for→ Fig. 78:

(1) Gas pedal
(2) Brake pedal
(3) Clutch pedal

The operation and freedom of movement of all pedals must never be impaired by objects or floor mats.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened in the footwell.

If a brake circuit fails, you will have to depress the brake pedal further than normal in order to bring the vehicle to a stop.

WARNING

Items in the driver footwell can hinder pedal operation. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious injury.

- Ensure that all pedals can always be operated without any hindrance.
- Always safely secure foot mats.
- Additional foot mats or other floor coverings should never be placed over the fitted foot mat.
- Ensure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

Ensure that you are able to operate the pedals freely at all times. For example, the braking distance to fully stop the vehicle will be longer if a braking circuit is faulty. The brake pedal will have to be depressed further and harder than normal. ◁

Gear change recommendation

Fig. 79 On the instrument cluster: gearshift indicator (variable 1).

Fig. 80 On the instrument cluster: gearshift indicator (variable 2).

Depending on the vehicle version, the gearshift indicator may not be available.

The gearshift indicator reduces fuel consumption by recommending gears on the display.

The gear recommendation process is illustrated on the following table: ▶

↓ 2 The selected gear is higher than the recommended gear. A downwards arrow is displayed next to the selected gear indication.

● 2 The selected gear matches the recommended gear. A dot is displayed next to the selected gear indication.

↑ 2 The selected gear is lower than the recommended gear. An upwards arrow is displayed next to the selected gear indication.

The gearshift indicator numbers may vary according to the selected gear.

Features with engaged reverse gear

The following will occur if reverse gear is selected and the ignition is switched on:

– The reverse light comes on.

– In vehicles with parking distance control system, the sensor is activated.

– In vehicles with rear view camera the rear view is displayed to assist the driver when parking or driving in reverse gear.

⚠ WARNING

The gear-change indicator is merely a supporting system and must not distract the driver from traffic.

- The gearshift indicator merely assists the driver in increasing fuel savings. The driver is exclusively responsible for assessing whether current vehicle, road, and traffic conditions allow safely following the gearshift indicator (e.g. when overtaking or driving with fully-loaded vehicles).

Enhanced gear selection decreases fuel consumption.

Warning texts may vary according to the instrument cluster version.

The gearshift indicator is switched off by pressing the clutch pedal while the ignition is switched on or when no gear is selected. ◁

Economical driving style

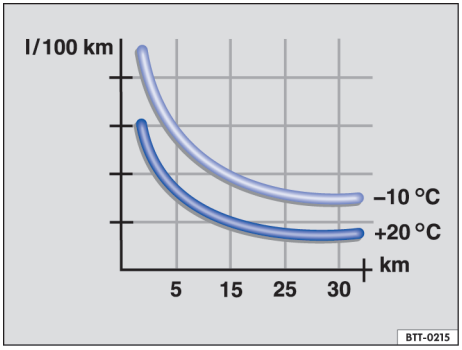


Fig. 81 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at two distinct ambient temperatures.

Driving correctly it is possible to reduce fuel consumption, harming the environment and engine, brake and tyre wear. Below are some tips on minimizing the environmental impact and save.

Fuel consumption, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres depend largely on 3 factors:

– Personal driving style.

– Conditions of use (such as weather and road surface characteristics).

– Technical conditions.

By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10 to 15%.

A car uses most fuel when accelerating. If you think ahead when driving, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the car roll slowly to a stop, for instance when you can see that the next traffic lights are red.

Changing gear earlier

Basically: the highest gear is always the most economical gear. As a rule of thumb, the following applies to most vehicles: at a speed of 30 km/h (19 mph) drive in 3rd gear, at 40 km/h (25 mph) in 4th gear and at 50 km/h (31 mph) in 5th gear. ▶

If traffic and driving scenarios are suitable, "skipping" gears when changing up a gear will also save fuel.

Do not drive gears to their upper limit. Use 1st gear only for pulling away then quickly change up to 2nd gear.

Vehicles with gearshift indicator help reduce fuel consumption by recommending ideal gears for each specific situation.

Rolling to a stop

Taking your foot off the accelerator will interrupt the supply of fuel to the engine and decrease fuel consumption.

Therefore, in situations such as approaching a red traffic light, let the vehicle roll without applying the accelerator. Only press on the clutch pedal to disengage if the vehicle becomes too slow or if the stopping distance is longer. The engine will then run at idling speed.

Switch off the engine in situations in which the vehicle might be stationary for a long time, e.g. at a level crossing.

Thinking ahead when driving, and driving with the "flow" of traffic

Frequently applying the brake and accelerator will increase fuel consumption. By thinking ahead when driving and by maintaining a sufficient distance to the vehicle in front, simply keeping your foot off the accelerator will stop the speed from fluctuating. This means that active braking and accelerating is not always necessary.

Driving smoothly and evenly

Smoothness is even more important than speed. The more evenly you drive, the lower your fuel consumption will be.

When driving on a motorway, it is much more effective to drive at a constant moderate speed than to drive with constant acceleration and braking. As a rule, driving with a constant style will get you to your destination just as quickly.

Using additional equipment in moderation

It is always important to be comfortable in your vehicle, but it is also important to consider the environment.

Some equipment will increase fuel consumption when switched on (examples):

- Air conditioning cooling system: if the air conditioning system is set to a very high or low temperature it will require a lot of energy, which is generated by the engine. Therefore the temperature setting in the vehicle should not vary too much from the outside temperature. It may be a good idea to air the vehicle before setting off and then to travel a short distance with the windows open. The air conditioning system should then be switched on once the windows have been closed.
- Keep the windows closed when driving at high speeds. Open windows increase fuel consumption.
- Switch off the rear window defrost function (not available in some versions) when the window is clear.

Other factors which increase fuel consumption (examples):

- Fault in engine management system.
- Driving in hilly regions.
- Driving with a trailer.

Avoid short journeys

Directly after a cold start, the engine has a very high fuel consumption. The engine reaches its working temperature after a few kilometres, when fuel consumption will return to a normal level.

The engine and catalytic converter need to reach their proper **working temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and pollutant emissions. The **outside temperature** also has a decisive influence.

The → Fig. 81 shows the variation in fuel consumption for the same journey at 20 °C and -10 °C.

Therefore, avoid making too many short journeys and car share whenever possible.

Under the same conditions, the vehicle will use more fuel in the winter than in the summer.

Not only is it illegal in some countries to "warm up" cold engines, it is also technically unnecessary and a waste of fuel.

Adjust tyre pressure

The correct tyre pressure reduces rolling resistance and therefore also fuel consumption.

When purchasing new tyres, always make sure that the tyres have optimum rolling resistance. ▶

Using low friction engine oil

Fully synthetic low-viscosity engine oils, known as low-friction engine oils, reduce fuel consumption. Low viscosity engine oils decrease frictional resistance in the engine and spread better and more quickly, especially for cold starts. They are especially effective in vehicles which make a lot of short journeys.

Always make sure that the engine oil level is correct and that you keep to the service intervals (oil change intervals).

When purchasing engine oil, always make sure it complies with engine oil standards and has been approved by Volkswagen.

Avoid unnecessary loads

The lighter the vehicle, the more economical and environmentally-friendly it is. An extra weight of 100 kg increases fuel consumption, for example, by up to 0.3 l/100km.

Remove all unnecessary items and loads from the vehicle.

Remove any unnecessary special equipment and accessories

The more aerodynamic a vehicle, the lower its fuel consumption. Special equipment and accessories, such as roof carriers or bicycle carriers, make the vehicle less aerodynamic.

You should therefore remove any special equipment and luggage carriers that are not being used, especially if you are going to be driving at high speeds.

⚠ WARNING

Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. ◁

Information on the brakes

New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during the first 300 km and must first be "run in" → ⚠. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. **During the run-in period, the braking distance is longer when the brakes are depressed fully or during emergency braking** than with brakes that have been fully run in. In the run-in period, the brakes should not be depressed fully and situations should be avoided that create a heavy load on the brakes. For example, when driving too close to other vehicles.

The **rate of wear** of the brake pads depends to a great extent on use conditions and driving style. When frequently driving in city traffic and short distances or in sporty manner, the brake pad thicknesses needs to be periodically checked by a Volkswagen dealership or a specialized workshop.

When driving with **wet brakes**, for example after driving through water, after heavy rainfall or after washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed as the brake discs will be wet, or possibly iced up (during the winter). Brakes must be "dried" as soon as possible by carefully braking at higher speed. Ensure that no following vehicle and no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action → ⚠.

A **layer of salt that accumulates on the discs and pads** will delay the braking effect and increase the braking distance. If the brakes on the vehicle have not been applied for a long time on roads that have been gritted with salt, the layer of salt must be reduced through careful braking → ⚠.

Corrosion on the brake discs and **dirt** in the brake pads are facilitated through long periods of inactivity, low mileage and low load levels. If there has been little or no use of the brake pads, or if there is corrosion, Volkswagen recommends that the brake discs and brake pads be cleaned by carefully braking several times at higher speed, always in compliance with speed limits and current driving conditions (e.g. wet or dry roads, night or day driving). Ensure that no following vehicle and no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action → ⚠.

Brake servo

The brake servo will only function when the engine is running and reinforces the pressure applied by the driver on the brake pedal.

If the brake servo is not functioning or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal will have to be depressed more forcefully, since the braking distance will be increased due to the lack of assistance for the brake system → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

New brake pads will not have the optimal braking effect when first fitted. ▶

- New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during the first 300 km and must first be “run in”. A reduced braking effect can be increased by applying more pressure to the brake pedal.
- You must drive particularly carefully when driving with new brake pads in order to reduce the risk of accidents, severe injuries and loss of vehicle control.
- Never drive too close to other vehicles when running in new brake pads, and never create a driving situation that will place a heavy load on the brakes.

WARNING

Overheated brakes reduce the braking effect and considerably increase the braking distance.

- When driving downhill the brakes are placed under particular strain and become hot very quickly.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear or move the selector lever to a lower gear. This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.
- Non-standard or damaged front spoilers could restrict the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat.

WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react more slowly and require longer braking distances.

- Carefully apply the brakes to test them.
- Always dry brakes and clean off any coating of ice and salt with a few cautious applications of the brake when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

WARNING

Driving without the brake servo can considerably increase the braking distance and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never allow the vehicle to roll if the engine is switched off.
- If the brake servo is not functioning or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal will have to be depressed more forcefully, since the braking distance will be increased due to the lack of assistance for the brake system.

NOTICE

- Never let the brakes “rub” by applying light pressure to the brake when it is not necessary to brake. Continual pressure on the brake pedal will overheat the brakes. This can considerably reduce the brake effect, increase the braking distance and, in certain circumstances, cause the brake system to fail completely.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear or move the selector lever to a lower gear. This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes. The brake system could otherwise overheat and fail. Only use the brakes to slow down or stop the vehicle.

If the front brake pads are tested, the rear brake pads should be tested at the same time. visual check of the thickness of all brake pads should be carried out regularly by checking the brake pads through the openings in the wheels or from the underside of the vehicle. If necessary, remove the wheels to carry out a comprehensive check. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose. ◁

Driving a loaded vehicle

For good vehicle handling when driving a loaded vehicle, please observe the following:

– Stow all items of luggage securely → page 119.
– Accelerate carefully and gently.
– Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
– Brake earlier than in normal driving.
– If applicable, observe the information concerning driving with towing mode → page 125.
– If applicable, observe the information concerning driving with a roof carrier → page 123.

WARNING

Moving loads can severely impair the vehicle's stability and driving safety, which can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Secure objects properly to prevent them from sliding.
- Use suitable straps when securing heavy objects. ◁

Driving with the bed cover open

Driving with the bed cover open is particularly dangerous. Properly fasten all objects and the open bed cover.

WARNING

Driving with an unlocked or open bed cover can cause serious injuries.

- Volkswagen recommends not driving with an open bed cover. However, if such scenario is absolutely indispensable, observe the following guidelines:
  - Always stow all objects in the bed securely. Loose objects can fall out of the bed and injure other road users.
  - Always drive carefully and defensively.
  - Avoid any abrupt or sudden driving and braking manoeuvres as this can cause the open bed cover to move unpredictably.
  - Any objects protruding from the bed must be marked to ensure that they are visible to other road users. Legal provisions must be followed.
  - In case of objects protruding from the load bed, the bed cover must never be used to "secure" or "hold" objects.

NOTICE

The vehicle's width changes when the bed cover is open. ◁

Driving through water on roads

Avoid driving through water on roads. Driving under such conditions hinders the driveability, and may cause severe damages to the vehicle, compromising the safety of the driver and other passengers. If absolutely necessary to cross the flooded area, observe the following in order to prevent damages to the vehicle, driver, and passengers:

- Check the water depth before driving through water on roads. The water level must be **no higher** than the lower edge of the vehicle body (underneath the doors) → ⓘ.
- Do not drive faster than walking speed.
- Never stop the vehicle, reverse or switch off the engine while in water.
- Oncoming vehicles create waves that could increase the water level for your vehicle to such an extent that it is not safe to drive through the water.

WARNING

After driving through water, mud and dirt roads the brakes may be hindered due to the humidity or freezing of brake pads or disks, increasing the braking distance.

- "Dry the brakes and eliminate ice" through careful braking manoeuvres. Proceed without putting other drivers at risk or failing to abide by legal requirements.
- Avoid sudden braking manoeuvres after crossing through water in roads.

NOTICE

- When driving through water in roads, some vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, chassis or electrical system, may be severely damaged.
- Never drive through salt water, since salt can cause corrosion. Rinse all components that have been exposed to salt water immediately with fresh water. ◁

Running-in

Please follow the regulations concerning running-in of new parts.

Running-in the engine

A new engine needs to be run in during the first 1,500 kilometres. During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on when all the moving parts have bedded down.

The style of driving during the first 1,500 kilometres will also affect the engine quality. Even after this time – and especially with a cold engine – drive the vehicle at moderate speeds in order to reduce engine wear and to increase the mileage that the engine can cover. Do not drive at engine speeds which are too low. Always shift down gear if the engine is not running "smoothly".

Up to 1,000 kilometres, the following applies: ▶

– Do not fully depress the accelerator.
– Do not drive the vehicle at more than 2/3 of the top engine speed.
– Do not drive with a trailer attached.

From 1,000 to 1,500 kilometres, *gradually* increase driving performance to top speed and highest engine speed.

If the engine is run in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and its oil consumption reduced. ◁

Using the vehicle in other countries and continents

The vehicle is produced specifically for a certain country and complies with this country's registration regulations valid at the time of vehicle production.

If the vehicle is going to be sold in another country or used in another country for an extended period, the legal requirements applicable in that country must be observed.

In some cases, certain equipment will have to be fitted or removed and functions deactivated. The scope and type of service available may also be affected. This is particularly important if the vehicle is driven in another climate region for a long period of time.

Because different frequency bands are used in different countries, the radio unit may not work in other countries.

NOTICE

- Volkswagen may not be held liable for damages caused to the vehicle due to low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work, and use of non-genuine parts.
- Volkswagen may not be held liable in case the vehicle does not comply or only partially complies with legal requirements from other countries and continents. ◁

Troubleshooting

Brake system malfunction

A brake circuit may have failed if you have to reduce speed and the vehicle does not brake as normal (sudden increase in braking distance). This will be indicated by the warning lamp (!) and in some cases a text message. Go to a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop as soon as possible. Drive at low speed when doing this and anticipate much longer braking distances and an increase in the pressure required on the pedal. ◁

Starting and stopping the engine

Ignition cylinder

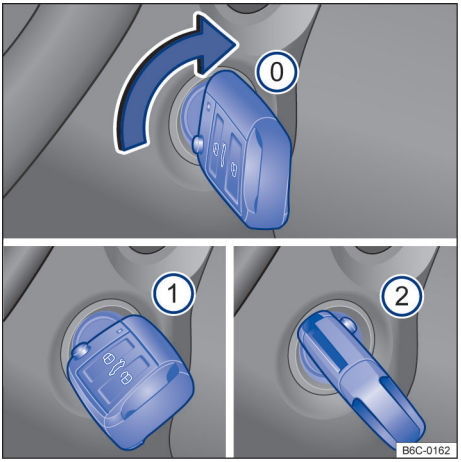


Fig. 82 Next to the steering wheel, to the right: vehicle key positions on the ignition cylinder.

Positions of the key in the vehicle → Fig. 82

(0) Ignition switched off. The vehicle key may be removed.

(1) Ignition switched on.

(2) Start the engine. When the engine starts running, release the key from the ignition. Upon releasing the vehicle key, it will return to position (1). ▶

Whenever it is necessary to restart the engine, return the key into position ⓪. The **restart blocker** in the ignition cylinder prevents the starter engine from working while the engine is switched on, preventing damages.

⚠ WARNING

Improper vehicle key use may cause severe injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and electrical equipment such as the window controls can be operated, which may lead to severe injuries.
- Never leave unattended children or people with special needs in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. Depending on the time of year, for example, locked vehicles can be subjected to very high or very low temperatures. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.
- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition cylinder while the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

The starter engine can only be activated while the engine is switched off. If the starter engine is restarted immediately after switching the engine off, both the starter engine and the engine may be damaged.

If the vehicle key is left in the ignition for a long period with the engine switched off, the vehicle battery could discharge. ◁

Start the engine

– *Vehicles with heated start:* turn the vehicle key to position → Fig. 82 ①. Ignition switched on. The warm starting system's indicator lamp will then light up on the instrument cluster. Wait until the indicator lamp is disabled, indicating the end of the fuel warming process (this action may be required when starting cold engines).

– *Vehicles with manual gearbox:* step on the clutch pedal and hold it firmly pressed until the engine is running. Position the gear selector lever into the neutral position.

– Turn the vehicle key in the ignition lock to position → Fig. 82 ② – do not accelerate. When the engine catches, release the ignition key.

– *Vehicles with heated start:* turn the vehicle key in the ignition lock to position → Fig. 82 ② to start the engine – do not accelerate. If step 5 is not followed, the indicator lamp will flash, indicating the need to stop the starting procedure and repeat it after returning the key to position → Fig. 82 ⓪ and waiting approximately 10 seconds.

– If the engine does not start, stop the procedure and repeat it after approximately one minute.

– Release the handbrake if you wish to pull away → page 95.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave the vehicle while the engine is running. The vehicle may move unexpectedly and cause severe accidents and injuries, especially with the selected gear or respective gear position.

⚠ WARNING

A start booster can explode and cause the engine to suddenly run at high revs.

- Never use a start booster.

NOTICE

- The starter engine or engine may be damaged when attempting to start the engine while driving or when the engine is started immediately after being switched off.
- While the engine is cool, avoid high rotations, total acceleration and increased engine load.
- Do not push or jump start the engine. Unburnt fuel may damage the catalytic converter.

Do not leave the engine running when the vehicle is stationary. Immediately resume driving when there is good visibility in the windows; be careful not to force the engine while cold. This allows the engine to reach its operation temperature faster and reduces emissions.

When starting the engine, major electrical consumers are switched off temporarily.

When starting from cold, the engine may be a little noisy for a short period of time. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern. ◁

25C.5L1.SAV.20

Stopping the engine

– The vehicle must be completely stationary → ⚠.
– Apply the handbrake firmly → page 95.
– Turn the vehicle key into the ignition lock in position → page 86 (0).

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle so that parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel, etc.
- Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, diesel particulate filter or the heat shields on the exhaust system.

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and cause severe accidents and injuries.

- The airbags and belt tensioners will not work if the ignition is switched off.
- The brake servo will not work when the engine is switched off. When the engine is switched off, greater force is required on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- The power steering does not work while the engine is switched off and requires more power to drive the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle has been driven at high load for a long period, the engine could overheat when it is switched off. In order to avoid damage to the engine, allow the engine to run in neutral for approximately 2 minutes before switching it off.

After the engine is switched off, the radiator fan in the engine compartment may run on for some minutes, even if the ignition is switched off or the vehicle key has been removed. The radiator fan will switch itself off automatically. ◁

Electronic immobilizer

Fig. 83 On the instrument cluster: display indicating the activated immobilizer - vehicles with Volkswagen Information System.

The immobilizer helps prevent the engine from being started and driven with an unauthorised vehicle key.

There is a chip in the key. It automatically deactivates the immobilizer when the vehicle key is inserted into the ignition cylinder.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition cylinder.

Coded vehicle keys are available in an authorised Volkswagen repairer→ page 45. ◁

Troubleshooting

Immobiliser malfunction

When an invalid vehicle key is used or when the system is damaged, a corresponding indication is shown **SAFE** on the instrument cluster display. The engine will not be able to be switched on. Use a valid vehicle key or visit a Volkswagen dealership. ◁

Manual gearbox

Manual gearbox: engaging the gear

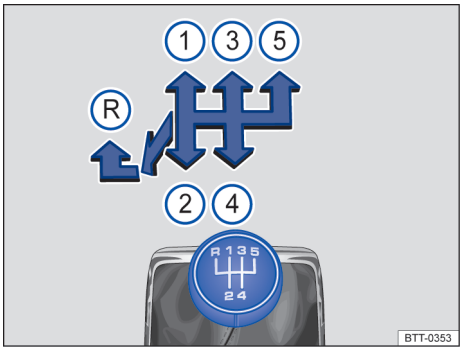


Fig. 84 Gear shift pattern of a 5-speed manual gearbox.

Engaging a forward gear

Each gear's positions are illustrated in the gear lever → Fig. 84.

– Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal.
– Position the gear selection lever into the neutral position → ⚠.
– Gently release the clutch pedal to start moving.

Selecting reverse gear

– Reverse gear should only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.
– Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal → ⚠.
– Move the gear lever to the neutral position and push down.
– Push the gear lever fully to the left and then to the front in the reverse gear position → Fig. 84 Ⓡ.
– Gently release the clutch pedal to start moving.

Shifting down gears

You should always select the next immediate gear when shifting down a gear whilst the vehicle is in motion. Engine revs should not be too high when doing so → ⚠. The clutch, gearbox and engine may be damaged if one or more gears are skipped when shifting down a gear at high speeds or high engine revs, even if the clutch is not released in the process → ⓘ.

⚠ WARNING

When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released.

- Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never select reverse gear while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting gears incorrectly to a lower gear can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, which can cause accidents and serious injuries.

ⓘ NOTICE

The clutch, gearbox and engine may be severely damaged if the gear stick of the manual gearbox is shifted to a gear which is too low when travelling at high speeds or at high revs. This also applies if the clutch remains depressed and the gears do not engage.

ⓘ NOTICE

Please note the following points in order to avoid damage and premature wear:

- Do not rest your hand on the gear lever when driving. The pressure from your hand is passed onto the selector forks in the transmission.
- Ensure that the vehicle has come to a full stop before engaging reverse gear.
- Always fully depress the clutch pedal when changing gear.
- Do not hold the vehicle by “riding” the clutch on a hill with the engine running. ◁

Steering assistance

Introduction

The power steering only functions when the engine is running.

The power steering assistance function is a system that supplements driver efforts when steering. This system has a steering mechanism based ▶

on a hydraulic valve/piston system, controlled by a hydraulic pump, lines, hydraulic fluid, and reservoir with built-in filter.

WARNING

The steering wheel is very difficult to turn if the steering assistance is not working. This can have a serious impact on your driving safety.

- The steering assistance only functions when the engine is running.
- Never allow the vehicle to roll if the engine is switched off.
- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.
- Align the wheels before switching off the vehicle. This will reduce vehicle power consumption during start-up.

Checking the power steering fluid level

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 90.

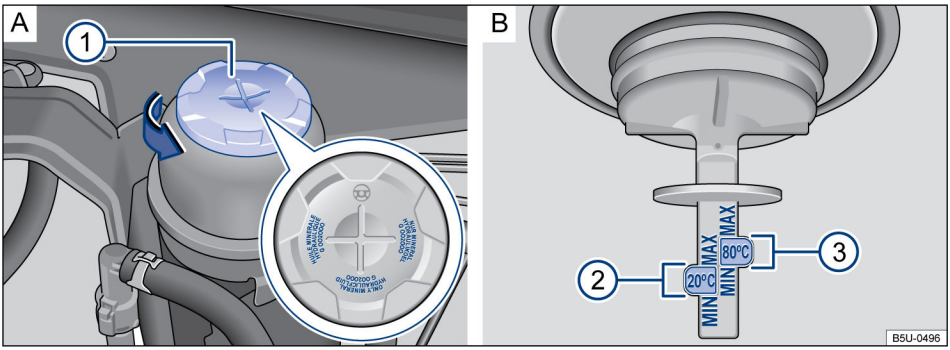


Fig. 85 On the engine compartment: A Power steering fluid reservoir. B Power steering fluid level control marks.

In case of damages to the power steering assistance system or if the engine is not running, the steering assistance function will not work. In this case, the steering effort required will be greater, but steering will still be possible.

Preparations

– Park the vehicle in a flat and steady surface.
– Align the front wheels.
– With the engine switched off, let the engine cool down → ⚠.
– Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 154.

Check fluid level with cool engine

– Turn the reservoir cap → Fig. 85 A (1) in the direction of the arrow.
– Remove the reservoir cap and clean the measuring rod over the cap using a clean cloth → ⚠.
– Screw the cap and wait a few seconds.
– Remove the cap again and check the fluid level by the “MIN” and “MAX” markings with the 20 °C indication on the measuring rod D (6).

Check fluid level with hot engine

– Turn the reservoir cap→ Fig. 85 A (1) in the direction of the arrow.
– Remove the reservoir cap and clean the measuring rod over the cap using a clean cloth → ⚠.
– Screw the cap and wait a few seconds.
– Remove the cap again and check the fluid level by the “MIN” and “MAX” markings with the 80 °C indication on the measuring rod D (7).

WARNING

Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the bonnet. Hot parts may cause burns when touched.

- Go to a Volkswagen Dealership in case of any difficulties when checking the fluid level.
- If necessary to refill the power steering fluid level, go to a Volkswagen Dealership, which has the approved fluid for your vehicle.

CAUTION

The steering wheel must not be fully turned for over 15 seconds while the engine is running. this may damage the power steering system.

- When the steering wheel is turned completely, the hydraulic fluid is quickly heated by the power steering pump. When the steering wheel is kept completely turned, while the vehicle is stationary, noises will be heard due to the substantial load to which the pump is submitted. Additionally, the engine's slow gear rate is also temporarily reduced.

CAUTION

- If the vehicle is running with fluid levels outside the (2) region (cool engine) or (3) region (hot engine), the power steering system may be damaged.
- Use only strong cloths in order to prevent them from shredding while cleaning the measuring rod, thus avoiding any residues in the rod from entering the hydraulic system and damaging the power steering system.

Driver assist systems

Starter assist system

Introduction

WARNING

The smart starter assist system technology cannot exceed specific physical limitations. The greater convenience offered by starter assist systems must not encourage drivers to assume unnecessary safety risks.

- Unexpected vehicle movements may cause severe injuries.
- The starter assist systems cannot be used as a replacement for the driver's full attention.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Starter assist systems are unable to hold vehicles in place in uphill slopes or provide sufficient braking power in downhill slopes (e.g. slippery or frozen surfaces), under any conditions.

◁

Off-road mode

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

Fig. 86 On the centre console: manual off-road mode on/off button.

Depending on the vehicle version, the off-road mode may not be available.

- Off-road mode disabled.
- Off-road mode enabled.

The off-road mode provides convenience features when driving in irregular surfaces, in addition to adjusting the accelerator pedal.

The off-road button also enables the following feature:

– Off-road ABS → page 101.

Enabling and disabling the off-road feature

To enable and/or disable the off-road mode, briefly press the button → Fig. 86 on the centre console.

After enabling the off-road mode, the button's indicator lamp is lit. The off-road mode must be re-enabled each time the engine is started.

Adjustment of the accelerator pedal

The accelerator pedal adjustment feature is enabled in order to enhance accuracy at low speed.

By pressing the accelerator pedal, the engine torque is controlled to facilitate starting and driving over slippery or unstable surfaces.

WARNING

Only use the off-road mode in unpaved roads or irregular/unstable surfaces.

- The wheels may skid if this mode is used improperly, potentially resulting in accidents and vehicle damages.

The same tyre models must be installed in all 4 wheels in order to ensure proper operation of the off-road mode. Different tyre tread diameters could cause unexpected changes in engine torque. ◁

Uphill assist system

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

The uphill assist system supports starting procedures in vehicles with ESC, actively holding the vehicle in place. ▶

The uphill assist system is automatically enabled under the following circumstances

Points 1 to 3 must be satisfied **simultaneously**:

1. Hold the brake pedal to keep the vehicle **stopped** in place on an uphill of approximately 5%.
2. The engine runs “smoothly”.
3. All doors must be closed. **Upon releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle is held in place for approximately 2 seconds. The brake is slowly released upon starting. If starting does not occur within two seconds, the brake is released and the vehicle will move backwards.**

The uphill assist system is immediately disabled:

1. If any of the aforementioned conditions are no longer available → page 93.
2. If the engine is switched off or flooded.

Adverse conditions:

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) may not identify very steep slopes or gradients (greater than 30%), which could affect the proper functioning of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and, consequently, the Hill Start Assist (HHC - Hill Hold Control) and the parking sensor.

To restore the aforementioned systems, it is sufficient that the vehicle is turned off and on again and that the driver starts the car and drives it at a speed greater than 25 km/h for a few seconds. ◁

Hill descent control system

Hill descent control system (HDC)

The hill descent control system helps the driver control vehicle speed by actively braking the vehicle in hill descents → ⚠.

However, the road must have sufficient adherence for the system to work. For example, the hill descent control system may not work properly when driving over icy or slippery roads.

The hill descent control system's availability is shown via the indicator lamp on the instrument cluster display. The indicator lamp *flashes* while the hill descent control system is operating.

The green indicator light remains lit while the descent system is switched on. The indicator light flashes while the hill descent control system is operating.

The hill descent control system is automatically enabled under the following circumstances

Points 1 to 3 must be satisfied **simultaneously**:

1. Off-road mode on and indicator lamp lit.
2. Speed below 30 km/h.
3. Minimum downhill angle of 10%.

While the hill descent control system is operating, the speed can be adjusted by braking or accelerating the vehicle (under the 30 km/h limit).

The hill descent control system works with or without selected gears.

The hill descent control system is immediately disabled:

- If the ESC is enabled.
- After leaving the downhill area.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h or if the vehicle comes to a complete stop.
- If the off-road mode is disabled.

⚠ WARNING

Always be ready to apply the brakes, in order to prevent accidents and injuries.

- The hill descent control system is merely a supporting system and may not be able to brake the vehicle in some situations.
- The hill descent control system may not prevent the vehicle from gaining speed.

The hill descent control system also works with the reverse gear selected.

The same tyre models must be installed in all 4 wheels in order to ensure proper operation of the off-road mode. Different tyre tread diameters could cause unexpected changes in engine torque. ◁

Cruise control system (GRA)

Introduction

The speed regulator system (GRA) assists the driver keeping constant a set speed.

Depending on the vehicle version, the cruise control (GRA) may not be available.

Speed range

The GRA is available for forward driving from 20 km/h onwards.

Changing gear

As soon as the clutch pedal is stepped on, the cruise control is interrupted and automatically taken up again after the gear change.

Driving downhill

When driving downhill the set speed may be exceeded due to the slope gradient.

Use the brake to reduce the speed of the vehicle accordingly and shift to a lower gear if necessary.

How do I control the GRA?

According to its version the GRA can be controlled by means of a lever on the steering column or through the multifunction steering wheel → page 94.

WARNING

When it is not possible to drive safely over a sufficient length and constant speed, the cruise control system may cause severe accidents and injuries.

- Never use the cruise control system (GRA) under intense traffic, short distances, steep, sinuous, and slippery circuits, such as ice, snow, humidity, or gravel, in addition to wet roads.
- Never use the GRA in free terrain or unpaved roads.
- Adjust the speed and safety distance from vehicles ahead based on weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- In order to prevent unexpected speed adjustments, always switch off the GRA after using.
- It is dangerous to resume stored speeds if the speed is too high for current road, traffic, or weather conditions.
- In descending slopes, the GRA may not maintain constant vehicle speed. The vehicle's weight increases speed by itself. Reduce the gear or apply the brakes. ◁

Cruise control system commands

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 94.

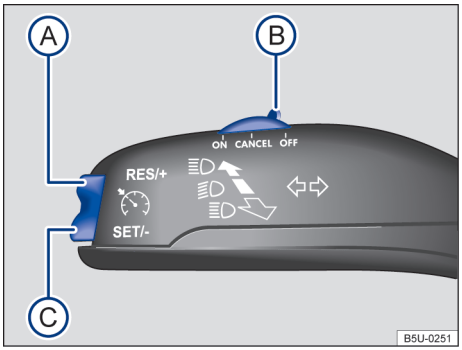


Fig. 87 To the left on the steering column: lever with switch and GRA operating buttons.

Switch on

– Place switch Ⓑ into position **ON**.

No speed is saved and no control is yet active.

Starting the cruise controlling

– While driving, press Ⓒ in the area **SET/–**.

Above 20 km/h, the current speed is stored and set. In addition, the green indicator lamp lights up ⏲.

Set speed

The saved speed can be adjusted via the button Ⓐ while the GRA is controlling:

– Press Ⓐ in area **RES/+** (briefly): + 1 km/h

– Press Ⓒ in area **SET/–** (briefly): - 1 km/h

To alter the set speed continuously keep buttons Ⓐ or Ⓒ pressed. The system adjusts the current speed accelerating or slowing down the vehicle, respectively. The vehicle does not actively brake. ▶

Interrupting the control

– Press the switch Ⓑ into position **CANCEL** or press the brake or clutch pedal.

The speed will remain stored.

Resume operation

– Press Ⓐ in area **RES/+**.

The current speed is resumed and adjusted.

Switch off

– Set the switch Ⓑ to position **OFF**.

The system is switched off. The stored memory is deleted. ◁

Troubleshooting

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 94.

The cruise control is automatically interrupted.

Several causes are possible:

– In case of a system failure that could restrict the GRA function.

– When driving for extended periods of time faster than the stored speed.

– When the brake or clutch pedals are activated.

– If the gear is shifted via the manual transmission.

– When the airbag is activated. ◁

Parking and manoeuvring

Parking

Please adhere to relevant legislation when stopping and parking your vehicle.

Parking the vehicle

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order.

– Park the vehicle on a levelled and stable surface → ⚠.

– Depress and hold the brake pedal until the engine has stopped.

– Lift the handbrake lever up → page 95.

– Switch off the engine and take your foot off the brake pedal.

– Remove the key from the ignition.

– Select 1st gear for flat ground or uphill inclines, or reverse gear for downhill inclines, and then release the clutch.

– Ensure that all occupants, particularly children, have left the vehicle.

– Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.

– Lock the vehicle.

Parking on uphill and downhill slopes

Before switching off the engine, turn the steering wheel so that the front wheels will roll against the kerb if the parked vehicle starts to move. ◁

– When facing downhill, turn the wheels so that they face the kerb.

– When facing uphill, turn the wheels so that they face the centre of the road.

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle so that parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel, etc. ▶

WARNING

Leaving and parking the vehicle incorrectly may cause the vehicle to move. This could lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Ensure that the handbrake is correctly engaged.
- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition cylinder while the vehicle is in motion.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and electrical equipment such as the window controls can be operated, which may lead to severe injuries.
- Never leave unattended children or people with special needs in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. Depending on the time of year, for example, locked vehicles can be subjected to very high or very low temperatures. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.

NOTICE

- Only release the brake pedal after pulling the handbrake, in order to prevent sudden vehicle movement after parking.
- Drive carefully in parking lots with long kerbs or fixed posts. Objects higher than the ground level may damage the bumper and other vehicle parts when parking. On order to avoid any damage, stop the vehicle before the wheels touch the bollards or kerbs.
- Carefully drive through entrances and slumps in terrains, ramps, kerbs, and other objects. Lowered vehicle parts, such as the bumper, spoiler and chassis, engine or exhaust parts may be damaged in these situations. ◁

Handbrake

Engaging the handbrake

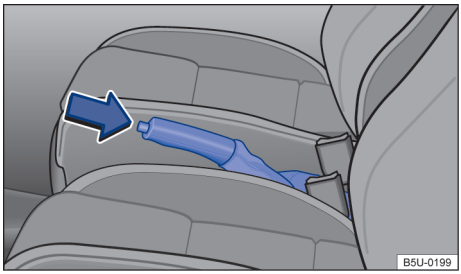


Fig. 88 Between front seats: handbrake lever.

Always pull the handbrake lever when leaving or parking the vehicle.

Applying the handbrake

– Press the interlock button and pull the handbrake lever upwards → Fig. 88 (arrow).
– The handbrake is pulled when the indicator lamp (!) lights up in the instrument cluster, while the ignition is switched on.

Releasing the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever slightly upwards and press the lock button → Fig. 88 (arrow).
– Guide the handbrake lever down while pressing down the interlock button.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the handbrake can cause severe accidents and injuries.

- The handbrake should never be used to brake the vehicle, except in emergencies. The braking distance is considerably longer as only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brakes.
- Never drive with the handbrake lever slightly pulled. This could overheat the brake and compromise the braking system. In addition, this causes premature wearing of rear brake pads.
- Never drive the vehicle with the handbrake lightly applied. The vehicle can move even while the handbrake is applied. ▶

NOTICE

Only release the brake pedal after pulling the handbrake, in order to prevent sudden vehicle movement after parking. ◁

Park distance control (Park Pilot)

Introduction

The park distance control system assists the driver with parking and manoeuvring.

The rear Park Distance Control (Park Pilot) may not be available, depending on the vehicle equipment.

The parking aid (Park Pilot) helps drivers steer and park vehicles. If the rear part of the vehicle approaches an obstacle, an intermittent alarm is sounded. The smaller the distance, the shorter are the intervals between acoustic alarms. When the obstacle is very close, a continuous alarm sounds, in which case it is recommended to stop the vehicle to avoid a collision.

When the vehicle continues to approach an obstacle while the continuous alarm is sounded, the system is no longer able to calculate the distance and the alarm may stop.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the rear bumper sensors transmit and receive ultrasound waves Using such ultrasound waves (transmission, reflection off of obstacles and reception), the system continuously calculates the distance between the bumper and the obstacle.

WARNING

The parking distance control (Park Pilot) cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- Manoeuvring vehicles without due attention may cause severe injuries.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Ultrasound sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people may not be detected.
- Always monitor the area around the vehicle as the ultrasound sensors will not always detect small children, animals and objects.
- Certain object and clothing surfaces may not reflect ultrasound sensor signals. These objects and people with such clothes may not be detected by the system, or be incorrectly detected.
- External sound sources may affect ultrasound sensor signals. Therefore, in certain circumstances the system may not detect persons and objects.
- Certain pavement surfaces may cause non homogeneous readings, such as for example, rugged asphalt or cobblestones.

NOTICE

- The ultrasound sensors may not always be able to recognize objects such as trailer drawbars, thin rails, fences, posts, trees and open or opening dropsides and may result in damage to the vehicle.
- If the parking distance control has detected an obstacle and issued a warning, the obstacle may move out of the detection range of the sensors as the vehicle approaches it, particularly if the object is very high or very low. In this case, these objects are no longer registered.
- he vehicle can sustain considerable damage if the warning given by the parking distance control is ignored.
- Impacts or collisions may damage or deregulate ultrasound sensors installed in the bumper.
- The system ultrasound sensors in the bumper must be kept clean and free of mud, dirt, ice and snow and not be covered up by stickers or other items as otherwise the system will not work properly.
- The ultrasound sensors should only be sprayed briefly when cleaning with pressure hoses and steam cleaners. A distance of more than 10 cm between the ultrasound sensors and the steam/hose nozzle must be ensured.
- Sources of noise can lead to errors in the parking distance control system, such as rough asphalt, cobblestones, induction coils, construction machines, or noises from other vehicles. ▶

- Special accessories eventually assembled in the vehicle, such as bicycle supports and/or towing devices, may limit the parking distance control operation.

In case of system failure, seek assistance at a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

Volkswagen recommends that drivers practise using the parking distance control in a low-traffic area or parking lot to familiarise themselves with the system. ◁

Enabling and disabling

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 97.

Fig. 89 On the upper part of the centre console: parking distance control on/off button (Park Pilot).

Depending on the vehicle version, the parking distance control may not be available.

Enabling the park distance control

– Selecting reverse gear.
– **OR:** press the P button.

The park distance control is automatically enabled when the vehicle moves in reverse gear.

According to the vehicle version, the park distance control system may also be enabled automatically.

Disabling the Park Distance Control

– Press P.
– **OR:** accelerate the vehicle forward at a speed higher than approximately 0 to -15 km/h.

Special features of the parking distance control

– The parking distance control only functions at a speed of up to 15 km/h.
– In some cases, the parking distance control registers water as an obstacle in the ultrasound sensors.
– If the distance remains the same, the acoustic warning volume reduces after a few seconds. If the continuous warning sounds, the volume will remain the same.
– As soon as the vehicle clears away from the obstacle, the intermittent alarm is automatically switched off. In case a new object approaches, the intermittent alarm is automatically switched on.
– The volume of the acoustic warning can be set in the **Settings** menu of vehicles with the Volkswagen Information System (I-System). Alternatively, a Volkswagen Dealership is qualified to set the sound volume.

The indicator lamp of the button P remains lit (yellow) while the parking distance control function is enabled. ◁

Representation on the display

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 97.

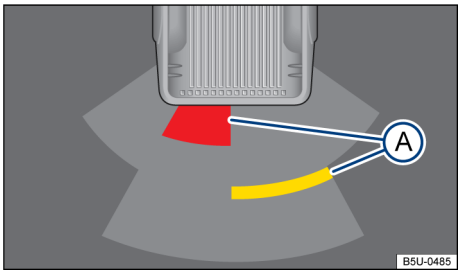


Fig. 90 Parking distance control display (coloured display): Ⓐ obstacle identified in the segment.

Depending on the vehicle version, the radio display (not available in some versions) → Fig. 90 will show the area scanned by the vehicle's rear ultrasound sensors Ⓐ. Possible obstacles are displayed using the vehicle as a reference point → ⚠. Simultaneously acoustic alarms are sounded. ▶

Ⓐ Rear vehicle area scanned.

Obstacle in the way of the vehicle's course. An intermittent acoustic sound is sounded. The shorter the distance, the shorter the intervals between acoustic alarms.

Nearby obstacle. A continuous acoustic sound is sounded. **Stop driving!**

Obstacle out of the vehicle's course.

The rear vehicle area scanned by the ultrasound sensors are shown on the factory-fitted radio or navigation system display. Possible obstacles are displayed using the vehicle as a reference point →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful not to become distracted from traffic due to display images.

In some versions, when the parking distance control is activated, the radio volume may be partially or entirely muted in order to allow the driver to hear the intermittent alarm. .

Acoustic warnings (and visual, if applicable) might take a few seconds to be played. ◁

Rear view camera

🕮 Introduction

In vehicles with rear view camera the rear view is displayed to assist the driver when parking or driving in reverse gear.

According to the version of the vehicle, the rear view camera system may not be available.

A camera in the rear bumper assists the driver when backing into a parking space or during maneuvering. The camera image is displayed together with the orientation guides projected by the system on the factory installed radio or navigation system's display.

⚠ WARNING

The use of the rear view camera to asses the distance to obstacles (people, vehicles, etc.) is imprecise and may cause serious accidents and injuries.

- The camera lens amplifies and distorts the field of vision making the displayed objects seem altered or imprecise.
- Certain objects, due to the display resolution and insufficient lighting, may not be displayed at all or only partially so, such as thin posts or fences. Therefore extra caution is required from the driver with the use of the camera to prevent accidents.
- The rear view camera has dead viewing angles where people and objects cannot be detected by it.
- Keep the camera lens clean, free of snow and ice and uncovered.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology shipped with the rear view camera cannot go beyond the limits imposed by physics and will only operate within the limitations of the system. Inattentive use or without supervision of the reverse gear driving assistant may cause serious accidents and injuries. The system cannot substitute the driver's attention.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to according to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Always keep in mind the parking direction and the relevant areas around the vehicle.
- Be careful not to become distracted from traffic due to display images.
- Always watch the area around the vehicle as small children, animals and objects are not always detected by the rear view camera.
- It is possible that the rear view camera is not able to display all the areas sharply.
- Use the rear view camera only with the dropside completely closed.

! *NOTICE*

The rear view camera only shows two-dimensional images on the display. Due to the absence of image depth, protruding objects or recesses on the road may be difficult to identify or not be identifiable at all. ◁

Enabling and disabling

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 99.

Enabling the rear view camera system

– Selecting reverse gear.

Disabling the rear view camera system

– Drive forward at least 15 km/h.

– **OR:** as soon as the reverse gear is disengaged or the selector lever moved from **R** position. ◁

Assumptions

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 99.

The following prerequisites must be met:

– The dropside must be closed.

– A reliable and clear image, for example, good visibility conditions and a clean lens.

– The space behind the vehicle must be clearly and completely recognized.

– The vehicle may not be damaged. The system must be checked by a Volkswagen Dealer if the position or the installation angle of the rear view camera is altered, such as after an impact to the rear. ◁

Representation on the display

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 99.

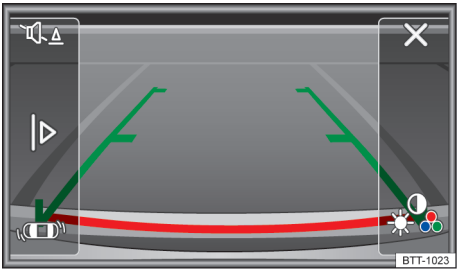


Fig. 91 Display of the radio or navigation system: reverse camera turned on (schematic).

Settings

When the rear view camera system is on, settings can be made via the function buttons on the display → Fig. 91. Some settings depend on the version.

Function touch pad surfaces and rear view camera system icons:

X Exit current display.

Adjust the display: brightness, contrast, colour.

Switch to Park Distance Control → page 97.

Displays the Park Distance Control indicator,

Hides the Park Distance Control indicator,

Turning the Park Distance Control sound on and off.

Rear view camera settings

Some settings such as *brightness, contrast and colour* can be set touching the respective function surfaces - or +, or sliding the respective adjustment slide.

– Stop the vehicle in a safe place and secure against rolling away.

– Turn the ignition and the radio or the navigation system on.

– Touch the function button .

– Perform the desired settings with the menu.

Orientation lines

Red line: safe distance backwards

Green side-lines: vehicle extensions. ◁

Parking

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 99.

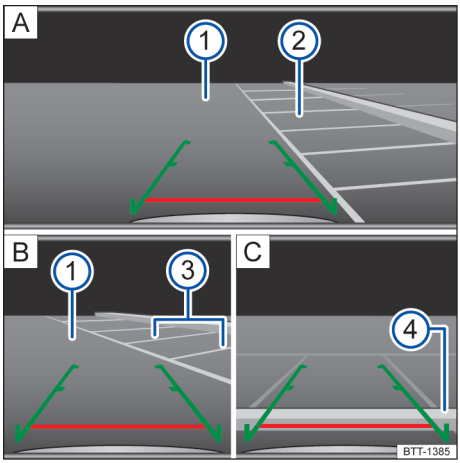


Fig. 92 Display of the radio or navigation system: enter the parking spot with the rear view camera (schematic display).

Key for→ Fig. 92:

- A Select parking spot.
- B Parking in the selected parking spot.
- C Line up vehicle to parking spot.
- **1** Lane.
- **2** Parking space.
- **3** Side limits of the parking space.
- **4** Rear limit of the parking space.

All length indications of the assistance guides refer to a vehicle on a flat surface.

Entering the parking space

- Position the vehicle in front of the parking spot → Fig. 92 (2) A.
- Selecting reverse gear.
- Drive slowly in reverse and manoeuvre so that the green side guides lead in between the delimiting lines of the selected parking space (2) A.
- Align the vehicle in the selected parking spot so that the green side guidelines are superimposed on the lateral limitation lines (3) B.
- Stop the vehicle when the red line hits the rear limit (4) C.

NOTICE

Small objects are not recognized by the rear view camera until 40 cm behind the vehicle and may cause damages to the vehicle.

NOTICE

Simulation images of the rear view camera are merely illustrative. ◁

Brake support systems

Information to the brake support systems

Depending on the vehicle version, some functions may not be available.

The **braking support systems** are the electronic brake variator (EBV), anti-lock brake system (ABS), brake assist (BAS), electronic differential lock (EDS), traction control system (ASR), and the electronic stability control (ESC).

Two different brake assist systems are used:

- Base system: the ABS and EBV brake assist systems only function when the engine is running. They make a considerable contribution to active driving safety.
- ESC system: the ESC, ABS, off-road ABS, BAS, ASR, EDS, and EBV brake assist systems only function when the engine is running. They make a considerable contribution to active driving safety.

Traction control (TCS)

The ASR reduces the engine drive in case of wheel skidding and adjusts the drive to road surface conditions. The TCS facilitates the starter, acceleration, and uphill effort, even under adverse road surface conditions.

To manually switch the ASR on or off, briefly press the button on the centre console → page 104.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

ESC helps mitigate skidding risks and enhances rolling stability by braking individual wheels in certain driving scenarios. The ESC recognizes rolling dynamics limit scenarios, such as vehicle ▶

oversteering or understeering, or wheel skidding. Specific braking interventions or reduced engine torque help the system stabilize the vehicle.

The ESC has limits. It is important to note that the ESC cannot defy the laws of physics. The ESC cannot assist in all scenarios faced by the driver. For instance, the ESC cannot assist whenever there is a sudden change of road conditions. If a length of a dry road is covered in water, mud, or snow, the ESC cannot provide the same assistance as an entirely dry road. If the vehicle "aquaplanes" (runs over a film of water instead of asphalt), the ESC will not be able to assist the driver, since there will be no asphalt contact and the vehicle can no longer be braked or steered. During quick curves, especially in areas with multiple curves, the ESC may not be as efficient in handling adverse scenarios, such as during courses of lower speed. When towing a trailer, the ESC will not be able to assist the driver in regaining vehicle control, unlike when the vehicle is not towing a trailer.

Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The ESC cannot defy the laws of physics, improve torque transmission available or keep the vehicle on the road when the driver is responsible for steering the vehicle away from the road. Instead, the ESC enhances the possibility of regaining vehicle control and assists under extreme road driving conditions based on the shift in direction caused by the driver, maintaining the vehicle in the desired direction. When driving at speeds that move the vehicle away from the road before the ESC can provide any assistance, the ESC will not be of any use.

The ABS and off-road ABS systems, set stability assist functions, and the uphill assist system are integrated to the ESC.

The ESC and integrated systems may be partially enabled/disabled manually → page 104.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The ABS prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied up until the point where the vehicle is nearly stationary and assists the driver in steering the vehicle and keeping it under control. This means that the vehicle is also less likely to spin, even when the brakes are depressed fully:

- Strongly press and hold the brake pedal. Do not take your foot off the brake pedal or reduce the force on the brake pedal!
- Do not "pump" the brake pedal or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal!
- Steer the vehicle while the brake pedal is fully depressed.
- The ABS will switch off when the brake pedal is released or if the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

If the ABS is taking corrective action, you will be aware of a **pulsing movement in the brake pedal** and some noise. However, ABS will not necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. The braking distance could even be longer when braking on gravel or on fresh snow covering an icy or slippery surface.

Anti-lock brake system for off-road driving (off-road ABS)

The off-road ABS system enhances vehicle braking in unstable surfaces. The off-road ABS system is part of the off-road feature → page 92.

Enable off-road ABS

- Briefly press the → Fig. 86 button on the centre console.

Manually disable off-road ABS

- Briefly press the → Fig. 86 button on the centre console.

Automatically disable off-road ABS

- The ABS or ESC (only for vehicles with ESC) detects critical driving scenarios.

Electronic brake variator (EBV)

In all vehicles, upon activating the brakes, the vehicle's centre of gravity shifts forward. This generates the risk of blocking rear wheels due to low traction. The electronic brake variator distributes brake force to all rear wheels, ensuring an adequate brake force distribution between the front and rear axles. Under normal conditions, the variator prevents damages to the rear section of the vehicle due to brake force applied over rear wheels. The electronic brake variator is part of the ABS functions.

Brake assist (BAS)

The brake assist system can help reduce the braking distance. The brake assist system enhances braking power if the driver quickly steps on ▶

the brake pedal during emergency braking scenarios. As a result, the total brake pressure is quickly reached, the braking power is enhanced, and the braking distance is reduced. This enhances the speed and efficiency of the ABS system.

Do not relieve pressure applied to the brake pedal! By releasing the brake pedal or reducing the pressure applied to the pedal, the brake assist system automatically disables braking power enhancement.

Electronic differential lock (EDS)

The EDS brakes skidding wheels and transfers traction force other traction wheels. In order to prevent the braked wheel disc from overheating, the EDS operates simultaneously with ASR and is automatically disabled in case of unusually high demand. As soon as the brake is cooled, the EDS is automatically enabled.

WARNING

Driving fast on icy, slippery or wet roads can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle and could cause serious injury to the driver and passengers.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by the brake assist system tempt you into taking any risks when driving.
- The brake assist system cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads will remain extremely dangerous.
- Driving too fast on wet roads can cause the wheels to lose contact with the road surface and “aquaplane”. A vehicle cannot be braked, steered or controlled once it has lost contact with the road surface.
- The brake assist system cannot prevent an accident if, for example, you are driving too close to the vehicle in front or are driving too fast for the individual situation.
- Although the brake assist systems are very effective and can help to control the vehicle in difficult driving situations, please always remember that the driving stability of the vehicle depends on tyre grip.
- When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, press the accelerator carefully. The wheels can spin even with active brake assist system, which may lead to a loss of vehicle control.

WARNING

The effectiveness of the brake assist systems can be considerably reduced if other components and systems that affect driving dynamics are not serviced correctly or are not functioning properly. This also applies, but not exclusively, to the brakes, tyres and other systems that have already been named.

- Always remember that modifications and changes to the vehicle may affect the brake assist systems.
- Alterations to the damping system or the use of non-approved wheel and tyre combinations can affect the function of the ABS and EBV and reduce its efficiency.
- The proper effectiveness of the brake assist systems is also conditioned to the use of suitable tyres → page 171, *Wheels and tyres*.

WARNING

Driving with worn brake pads or with a faulty brake system can cause severe accidents and injuries.

- If there is any suspicion that the brake pads might be worn or the brake system might be damaged, immediately seek assistance at a Volkswagen Dealership to check the brake system and replace worn brake pads.

WARNING

Incorrectly parking the vehicle could cause severe injuries.

- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition cylinder while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never park the vehicle so that parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel, etc.
- Always apply the handbrake fully when the vehicle is parked.
- Never leave unattended children or people with special needs in the vehicle. They could release the handbrake, move the selector lever or gearshift lever, and thus set the vehicle in motion. This could lead to accidents and severe injuries. ▶

- Always take the vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and electrical equipment such as the window controls can be operated, which may lead to severe injuries.
- Never leave unattended children or people with special needs in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. Depending on the season of the year, the interior of closed / locked vehicles, for example, can get extremely hot or cold. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.

NOTICE

- Only release the brake pedal after pulling the handbrake, in order to prevent sudden vehicle movement after parking.
- Drive carefully in parking lots with long kerbs or fixed posts. Objects higher than the ground level may damage the bumper and other vehicle parts when parking. On order to avoid any damage, stop the vehicle before the wheels touch the bollards or kerbs.
- Carefully drive through entrances and slumps in terrains, ramps, kerbs, and other objects. Lowered vehicle parts, such as the bumper, spoiler and chassis, engine or exhaust parts may be damaged in these situations.

The ESC and ASR can only operate properly if all 4 wheels share the same tyre type. Different tyre tread diameters could cause unexpected changes in engine torque.

In case of damages in the ABS system, the ESC, TCS, and EDS will also be disabled.

Operating noises may be heard during regulating procedures of the described systems. ◁

ESC system (Electronic stability control)

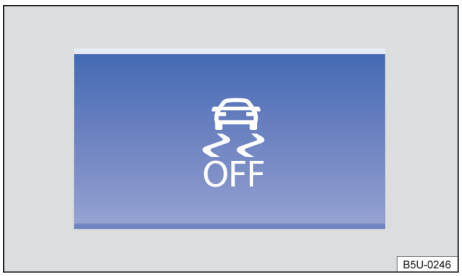


Fig. 93 On the centre console: manual ASR on/off button.

Depending on the vehicle version, the ESC function may not be available.

The electronic stability control system (ESC) only works while the engine is switched on and includes ABS, EDS, and ASR.

The ASR may only be disabled by pressing the → Fig. 93 button while the engine is running. Only disable the ASR system under sufficient propulsion scenarios (among others):

– When driving in deep snow or over loose ground.
– During “free tyre spinning” while stuck in mud or other areas.
– When sufficient propulsion is no longer reached.

Next, enable the ASR by pressing the button.

With the ASR disabled, the set stability and stabilizing brake interventions remain active. ◁

Troubleshooting

Failure warning and indicator lamps

Stop driving! Damaged brake system. Go immediately to a Volkswagen dealership or a specialized company → ⚠.

Lit: ABS out of action or malfunctioning. Go to a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.

Lit: ESC disabled for system-related reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. As the case may be, drive on for a short ▶

distance at about 15-20 km/h. Case is still be on, seek a Volkswagen dealership or a specialized company.

Guidelines for the braking support systems

When there is a suspicion that there may be a faulty function, read and observe the following instructions:

– The ESC and TSC can only function properly when all four wheels are equipped with the same tyre type and model. Different diameters among the wheels/tyres may cause an unexpected reduction in engine power.
– In case of damages in the ABS system, the ESC, TCS, and EDS will also be disabled.
– Operating noises may result from adjustments to the described systems.

Adverse conditions:

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) may not identify very steep slopes or gradients (greater than 30%), which could affect the proper functioning of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and, consequently, the Hill Start Assist (HHC - Hill Hold Control) and the parking sensor.

To restore the aforementioned systems, it is sufficient that the vehicle is turned off and on again and that the driver starts the car and drives it at a speed greater than 25 km/h for a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any warning lamps or text messages that appear.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.

WARNING

Driving with faulty brakes may cause severe accidents and injuries.

- If the braking system warning lamp lights up or remains lit while driving, the brake fluid level is too low or the braking system is faulty. Stop immediately and seek expert technical assistance → page 165, *Brake fluid*.
- If the braking system warning lamp lights up along with the ABS control lamp , the ABS regulation function may be faulty. This indicates that the rear wheels may skid relatively fast when breaking. Locked rear wheels may cause the driver to loose control of the vehicle! Whenever possible, reduce speed and drive carefully at minimum speed to the nearest Volkswagen Dealership to check the braking system. Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres while driving.
- If the ABS control lamp lights up or remains lit while driving, the ABS is not functioning properly. The vehicle can only be braked with regular brakes (without ABS). The protection provided by the ABS is not available in this scenario. Go to a Volkswagen Dealership as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to vehicle damages. ◁

Practical equipment

Stowage compartment

Introduction

Only use stowage compartments to stow light or small objects.

WARNING

Loose objects may be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre. This can cause serious injury and can also lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

- Do not stow any pets or any hard, heavy or sharp objects in the vehicle's open stowage compartments, on the dash panel, items of clothing or bags in the vehicle interior.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while driving.

WARNING

Items in the driver footwell can hinder pedal operation. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious injury.

- Ensure that all pedals can always be operated without any hindrance.
- Foot mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.
- Additional foot mats or other floor coverings should never be placed over the fitted foot mat.
- Ensure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

- Do not store any temperature-sensitive objects, food or medicines inside the vehicle. Hot and cold temperatures could damage them or render them unusable.
- Items stored in the vehicle made from transparent materials, e.g. glasses, magnifying glasses or transparent suction cups on the windows, can concentrate the sun's rays and thus cause damage to the vehicle. ◁

Stowage compartment in the driver side

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 106.

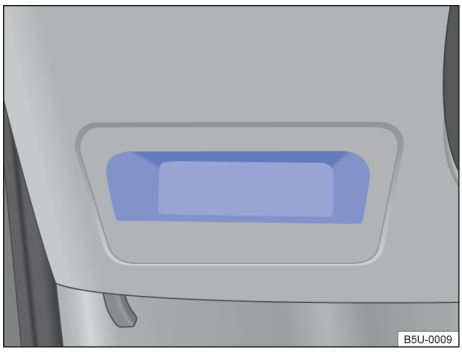


Fig. 94 On the left-hand side, in the lower section of the console: stowage compartment.

A stowage compartment may be available on the driver side to store small objects → Fig. 94.

WARNING

Loose objects may be projected inside the vehicle in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, as well as during accidents, and may cause severe injuries.

- Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp objects loose in the open stowage compartment. ◁

Front stowage compartment

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 106.

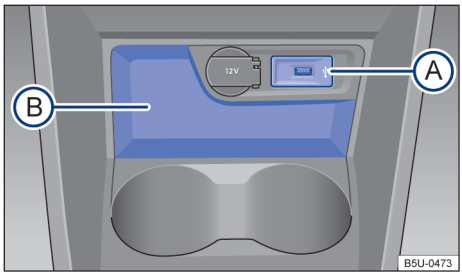


Fig. 95 In the front centre console: stowage compartment. ▶

Open stowage compartment in the front centre console → Fig. 95 Ⓑ.

Depending on the vehicle version, stowage compartment Ⓐ may contain a factory-fitted USB interface.

There may be a 12 V socket in the stowage compartment.→ page 109

Stowage compartment on the passenger side

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 106.

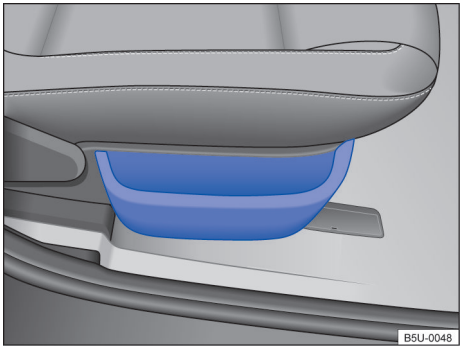


Fig. 96 In the side of the passenger seat: stowage compartment.

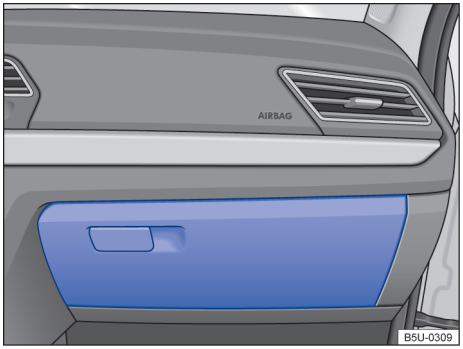


Fig. 97 On the passenger side: stowage compartment.

Stowage compartment on the side of the seat

Depending on the vehicle version the seat side stowage area may not be available.

There may be an open stowage compartment in the side of the passenger seat → Fig. 96.

Opening and closing the stowage compartment

To *open*, pull the opening lever → Fig. 97.

To *close*, press the cover upwards until it fits into place.

The *vehicle wallet* may be kept in the stowage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Open stowage compartments may increase the risk of severe injuries in case of accidents or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- Always keep glove box closed while driving.

Rear stowage compartments

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 106.

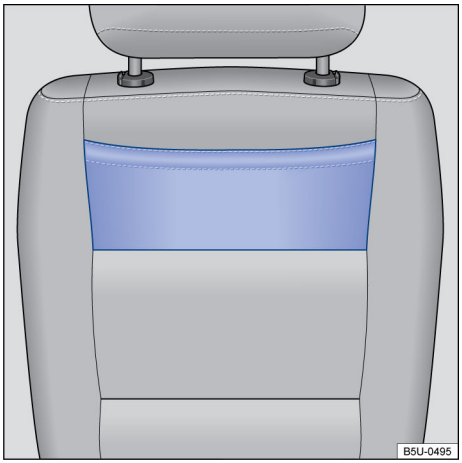


Fig. 98 On the passenger seat: stowage bag.

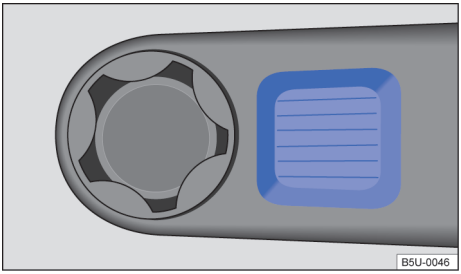


Fig. 99 In the rear centre console: stowage compartment.

Stowage compartment.

Depending on the vehicle version, the storage bag on the passenger seat may not be available.

On the rear part of the passenger's seat there's a storage bag → Fig. 98.

Stowage compartment in the rear centre console

There may be a stowage compartment in the rear centre console → Fig. 99. ◁

Cup holder

Introduction

WARNING

Incorrect use of the cup holders can cause injury.

- Do not place any hot drinks in a cup holder. In the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident, hot drinks in a cup holder can be spilled and cause scalding.
- Ensure that drink bottles or any other objects do not enter the driver footwell and obstruct the pedals while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never place heavy cups, food or any other heavy items in the cup holder. These heavy objects could be flung through the vehicle interior during an accident and cause serious injuries.

WARNING

Closed drink bottles can explode in the vehicle in extreme heat or crack in extremely cold temperatures.

- Never leave closed drink bottles in an extremely hot or extremely cold vehicle for extended periods.

NOTICE

Do not leave any open drinks in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. Drinks that are spilled, for example during braking, can damage the vehicle and the vehicle electric system. ◁

Cup holders in the centre console

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 108.

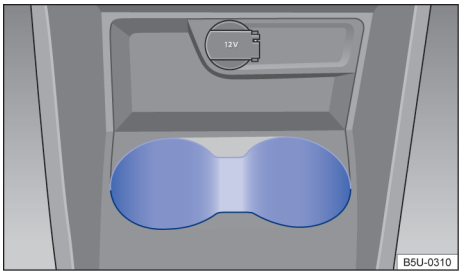


Fig. 100 In the front centre console: cup holder.

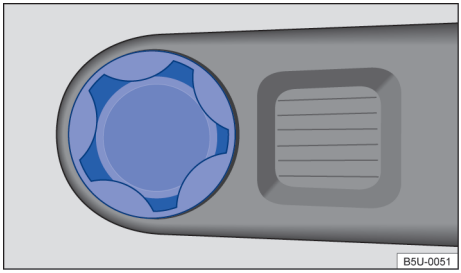


Fig. 101 In the rear centre console: cup holder.

There are two cup holders in the front centre console → Fig. 100 and one cup holder in the rear centre console → Fig. 101. ◁

Drink holder on the side of the rear seat - New Saveiro with Extended Cab

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 108.

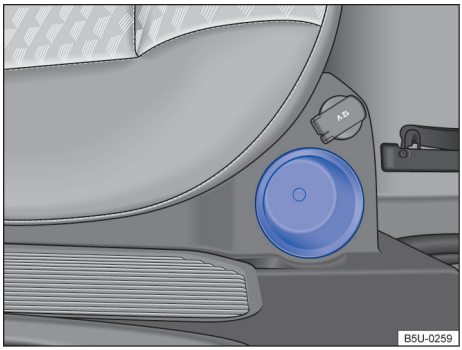


Fig. 102 On the side of the rear seat: cup holder.

In vehicles with extended cab, there is a drink holder on the sides of the rear seat → Fig. 102. ◁

Cup holders and bottle holders in the tailgate lining

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 108.

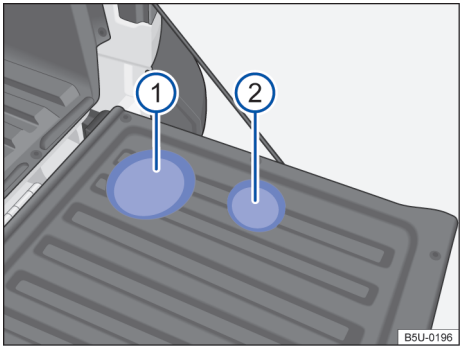


Fig. 103 In the tailgate lining: ① bottle holder and ② drink holders.

The bottle holder and cup holders may only be used while the tailgate is opened and the vehicle is stationary.

Open the tailgate to use the bottle holder → Fig. 103 ① and drink holders ②.

There are two bottle holders ① and two cup holders ② in the tailgate lining; one of each in each side of the tailgate lining. ◁

Socket

Introduction

Electrical equipment can be connected to the socket in the vehicle.

Electrical equipment connected must be in perfect conditions and must not have any defects.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the socket and electrical accessories can cause fires and other severe injuries.

- Never leave children in the vehicle unattended. The socket and the devices connected to it can be used when the ignition is switched on.
- If the electrical device gets too hot, switch off the device immediately and disconnect it from the socket.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

In order to prevent damage to the electrical system, never connect equipment which generates electricity, such as solar panels or battery charging units for charging the vehicle battery, to the 12-volt socket.

Do not leave the engine running when the vehicle is stationary.

Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery.

Unshielded devices can cause interference with radio reception and vehicle electronics.

Interference of AM radio reception could occur if electric devices are used in the vicinity of the rear window aerial. ◁

Vehicle sockets

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 109.

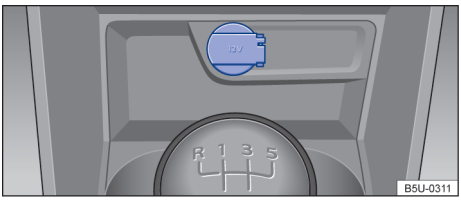


Fig. 104 In the front centre console: 12 V socket.

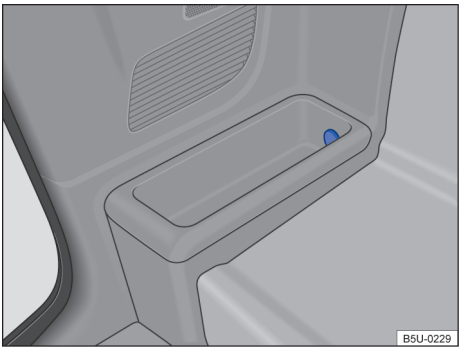


Fig. 105 In the side panel of the internal luggage compartment:12 V socket.

Maximum power rating

12 V socket 120 W

The maximum power rating of the sockets may not be exceeded. The maximum power rating of each device is stated on its type plate.

12 V socket

The 12-volt socket only works while the ignition is switched on.

Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery. Therefore only plug electrical consumers into the sockets when the engine is running.

To prevent damage due to voltage fluctuation, switch off any connected devices before switching the ignition or engine on or off.

The following 12-volt sockets are available in the vehicle:

– In the front centre console → Fig. 104.
– In the stowage compartment on the right hand side of the internal luggage compartment → Fig. 105 (may not be available depending on the vehicle version).
– On the internal luggage compartment (not available in some vehicle versions).

NOTICE

- Refer to the owner's manuals of connected devices!
- Never exceed the maximum power rating as this could damage the entire vehicle electrical system.
- **12 V socket:**
  – Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with current guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
  – Never feed electricity into the socket. ◁

Vehicle sockets - New Saveiro with extended cab

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 109.

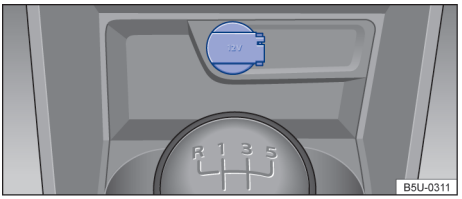


Fig. 106 In the front centre console: 12 V socket. ▶

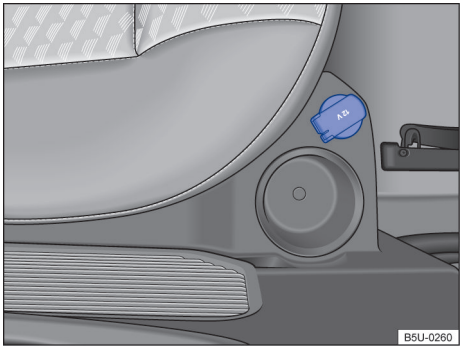


Fig. 107 On the side of the rear seat: 12-volt socket - New Saveiro with extended cab.

Maximum power rating

12 V socket 120 W

The maximum power rating of the sockets may not be exceeded. The maximum power rating of each device is stated on its type plate.

12 V socket

The 12-volt socket only works while the ignition is switched on.

Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery. Therefore only plug electrical consumers into the sockets when the engine is running.

To prevent damage due to voltage fluctuation, switch off any connected devices before switching the ignition or engine on or off.

The following 12-volt sockets are available in the vehicle:

– In the front centre console → Fig. 106.
– On the stowage compartment on the right-hand side of the rear seat → Fig. 107.
– On the internal luggage compartment (not available in some vehicle versions).

NOTICE

- Refer to the owner's manuals of connected devices!
- Never exceed the maximum power rating as this could damage the entire vehicle electrical system.
- **12 V socket:**
  – Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with current guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
  – Never feed electricity into the socket. ◁

Luggage compartment socket

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 109.

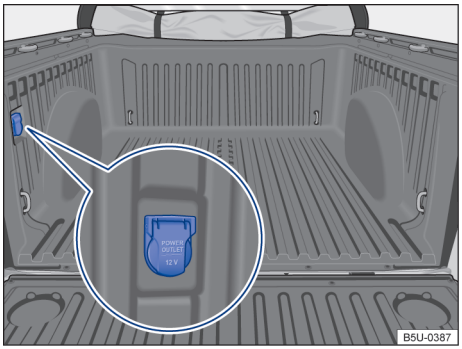


Fig. 108 Luggage compartment: 12-volt socket.

Depending on the vehicle version, the luggage compartment 12-volt socket may not be available.

Maximum power rating

12 V socket 120 W

The maximum power rating of the sockets may not be exceeded. The maximum power rating of each device is stated on its type plate.

12 V socket

The 12-volt socket only works while the ignition is switched on.

Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery. Therefore only plug electrical consumers into the sockets when the engine is running.

To prevent damage due to voltage fluctuation, switch off any connected devices before switching the ignition or engine on or off.

– The 12-volt socket is located on the internal luggage compartment → Fig. 108 (not available in some vehicle versions). ▶

NOTICE

- Refer to the owner's manuals of connected devices!
- Never exceed the maximum power rating as this could damage the entire vehicle electrical system.
- **12 V socket:**
  - Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with current guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
  - Never feed electricity into the socket. ◁

Composition Touch 2

Device overview

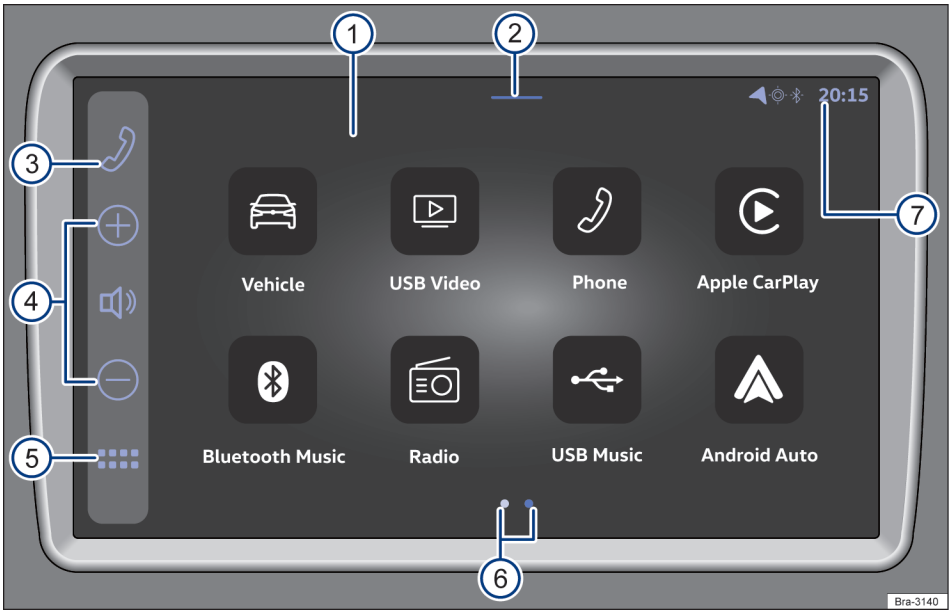


Fig. 109 Control overview

Depending on the vehicle version, the radio may not be available.

The unit is provided in different variations, distinguished by the unit's button functions and lettering.

① **Display:** touchscreen.

② **Shortcuts:**press to access the button to turn off, activate or deactivate Bluetooth®, equalizer and settings.

③ **Phone:** press to open the phone interface.

④ **Volume:** press to adjust the volume.

⑤ **Menu:** press to access function buttons.

⑥ **Function buttons:** press to execute the function.

⑦ **Status and clock icons:** If connected, status of the Bluetooth® connection, phone battery status, and mobile network signal information. ◁

Radio

Introduction

Follow the national rules and legal provisions when using the radio.

Other additional electric devices connected to the vehicle may interfere with the receipt of the broadcast radio signal and cause noises in the speakers.

Parking lots, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains may interfere with unit signal reception. ▶

Metal-coated stickers or films may hinder reception in vehicles with windscreen aerials. ◁

Unit operation

Fig. 110 Main menu: radio.

Open the main menu

Press Radio button.

Tune into stations

Select a frequency range FM/AM.

To choose a station, press the ⏮ / ⏭ arrow buttons to browse through available stations.

Store stations

The currently tuned in radio station is displayed in the centre of the display.

To store a station, turn into the station and press the ♡ button. The stored station will appear in a position on the bottom of the display. Briefly press the button to access the station.

Up to 18 stations can be stored for each frequency band.

Delete stored stations

To delete a saved station, press ♡ button. ◁

These audio files can only be played by the respective units or through the respective radio system's audio input ports/interfaces (USB port or Bluetooth® interface).

Copyrights

Audio and video files stored in data media may be subject to applicable national and international copyright and data protection laws. Legal provisions must be followed.

Volkswagen takes no responsibility for damaged or lost files. ◁

File and database requirements

Supported listed file formats are simply referred to as “audio and video files”. ▶

Media

Introduction

“**Media sources**” are referred to as audio sources that contain audio data in different data storage units, such as external MP3 Players or audio files.

Media source	File system	Playing requirements
Data storage unit specified as per USB 2.0	FAT16, FAT32, NTFS, exFAT, Ext3 and Ext4	– Audio files MP3 (mp3), WMA (.wma), WAV (.wav), FLAC (.flac), AAC (.aac), and M4a. – Video files MOV (.mov), MP4 (.mp4), and MKV (.mkv) (H.264). – At most 2.000 elements per folder level. – Max. 20,000 audio and video files per data storage unit. In FAT32, it supports up to 16GB of storage.
Audio file reproduction via Bluetooth®[a].		– External Media Player must support Bluetooth® A2DP profile.
External audio source playback via the USB port.		– External data storage unit in the USB.

a) Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

Volkswagen may not be held liable for damaged or lost files in data media. ◁

Media operation

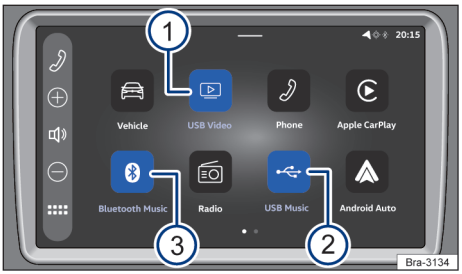


Fig. 111 Main menu: Media.

Select media

Press the desired media source button. The following media sources are available:

- **USB Music**: external data storage unit in the USB port.
- **Bluetooth media:** Bluetooth® audio.
- **USB Video**: external data storage unit in the USB port.

Basic functions

- To browse through media tracks, press the ⏮ / ⏭ buttons.
- To stop playing media, press ⏸.
- To resume playing, press the ▶ button.
- You can select artists, albums, and songs to access a catalog of music stored on your device.

Random mode

Random audio playback.

Repeat mode

- To repeat all tracks, select.
- To repeat only the current track, select.

Advance

To rewind or advance the videos by 10 seconds, select the ⏪ or ⏩ button.

NOTICE

The screen is blocked for video playback and games while driving. ◁

Connect

Bluetooth®

Fig. 112 Connect via Bluetooh. ▶

Fig. 113 Phone function.

Connection via Bluetooth®

– To connect Bluetooth®, press the Bluetooth Media button.
– Select the Connect Device button.
– The radio unit will automatically search for devices available (turn on Bluetooth® visibility in on your device). For more information, refer to the audio device's instruction manual.
– To establish a connection, select the name of the device to connect. Compare the code shown on the radio display and the code shown on the mobile phone. If the code matches, confirm the code to connect.
– To define the function on the device, select the phone button to use phone functions and select the media button to use media functions → Fig. 112.

Bluetooth® audio function

To activate Bluetooth® audio mode; after connection, audio files from an audio source connected via Bluetooth® (e.g. mobile phone) will be played on the vehicle's loudspeakers.

After connecting to a Bluetooth® audio source, follow the functions in the Bluetooth Media menu.

Phone function

Phone menu displays depend on the functions available on the used mobile phone model. There may be differences.

To enable Bluetooth® phone mode, the phone button must be active after connecting. In this mode, the user can access phone contacts, make and receive calls using the vehicle's loudspeakers.

Receiving phone calls:

– Press to receive a phone call.

Making phone calls:

– In the phone function , enter the number to call and press .
– Or access your contact book via the Contacts button and select the contact you want to make the call.
– To search through the contact list, press the Search button and in the top bar, type the name you want to search for.

During a phone call:

– Press to mute the microphone during a phone call. Press again to unmute the microphone.
– Press to open the keypad.
– To end a call on hold, press the hang up button .

Up to 1,000 contacts can be synchronized via Bluetooth® connection. ◁

Apple CarPlay™

Apple CarPlay™ Menu

Fig. 114 Apple CarPlay™ Menu.

Establish connection

To use Apple CarPlay™ the mobile phone **must** support Apple CarPlay™.

Depending on the mobile phone used, it is only possible to connect via the USB cable.

End connection

– To finish the connection, remove the USB cable. ▶

Specificities

During an active Apple CarPlay™ connection, the following features are enabled:

- When connected with a USB cable, Bluetooth connections between mobile devices and the radio are **not** possible.
- Phone functions are possible through Apple CarPlay™ and through the radio's phone function.
- Apple CarPlay™ functions may be limited while driving.
- An active Apple CarPlay™ device cannot be used as a media device.
- Navigation routes are not shown on the instrument cluster display.

NOTICE

Apple CarPlay™ is a software platform from Apple that allows you to access certain applications and features on your mobile phone through your car's Infotainment System touchscreen or mobile phone's voice assistants. Once connected, Apple CarPlay™ mirrors a simplified version of the mobile phone interface optimized for driving. All the generated image and displayed functionalities are controlled by the mobile phone itself in this situation. Therefore, any situation that influences the performance of the mobile phone will directly affect the performance on the Infotainment screen, causing the impression that the Infotainment is faulty, when in fact the functions controlled by the vehicle are operating normally.

For more information, refer to the mobile device's owner's manual. ◁

Android Auto™

Android Auto™ Menu

Fig. 115 Android Auto™ Menu

Connect

To use Android Auto™ the mobile phone **must** support Android Auto™.

Depending on the mobile phone used, it is only possible to connect via the USB cable.

Depending on the mobile phone used, an adequate application must be installed to use Android Auto™ on the device.

Press the radio button to access Android Auto™ functions.

To access radio controls, press the home screen shortcut.

End connection

- Remove the USB cable.
- To return to the home screen, press .

Specificities

During an active Android Auto™ connection, the following features are enabled:

- Bluetooth connections between mobile devices and the radio are **not** possible.
- Telephone functions are possible via Android Auto™.
- Simultaneous phone calls via Android Auto™ and via the radio are **not** possible.
- An active Android Auto™ device cannot be used as a media device on the menu.
- Navigation routes are not shown on the instrument cluster display. ▶

NOTICE

Android Auto™ is a software platform from Google that allows you to access certain applications and features on your mobile phone through your car's Infotainment System touchscreen or mobile phone's voice assistants. Once connected, Android Auto™ mirrors a simplified version of the mobile phone interface optimized for driving. All the generated image and displayed functionalities are controlled by the mobile phone itself in this situation. Therefore, any situation that influences the performance of the mobile phone will directly affect the performance on the Infotainment screen, causing the impression that the Infotainment is faulty, when in fact the functions controlled by the vehicle are operating normally.

For more information, refer to the mobile phone's owner's manual. ◁

Settings

Introduction

The range of possible settings depends on the country, unit, and the vehicle's version. ◁

Audio

It is possible to adjust the sound coming from audio sources, to adjust the frequency gains, balance and effects on the speakers, access the Audio menu using the function buttons.

Equalizer

Adjust the sound characteristic. You can set a preset equalization (Rock, Pop, Classic, Jazz, Vocal and Flat) or manually adjust the equalization according to your preference.

Balance

Adjust sound distribution. The grid shows the current point of balance of the sound inside the vehicle. To change the sound distribution, touch the desired position in the vehicle interior view. To centralize the sound distribution in the vehicle interior view, touch the Centre button.

Effects

Enable or disable dynamic bass boost and distortion monitoring and limiting in the tab. ◁

System settings

Fig. 116 Settings menu.

Open the Settings menu

– Press ⚙.
– Select the function for the area for which the settings are to be set. Changes are automatically applied after closing a menu.

Function button: effect

Bluetooth: Bluetooth® settings.
- Bluetooth Status: make the Bluetooth® device visible or hidden.
- Paired devices: shows the paired devices. Disconnect and connect individual Bluetooth® devices and Bluetooth® profiles.

Display: display settings.
- Brightness: to display brightness settings.
- Automatic brightness: automatic display brightness level.

Sound settings: make volume adjustments.
- Media: establish media volume.
- Notifications: establish volume of notifications.
- Keyboard tones: enable and disable keyboard tones.
- Ringtone sounds: enable and disable ringtone sound

System settings: perform system adjustments.
- Date: perform date settings.
- FM band: search for available stations in the current frequency band. ▶

Function button: effect
Software update: update the infotainment system software. About Infotainment: display system information (restore factory settings, close applications, device number, hardware and software status).

Reset system

To reset the system, press the **Settings** button and in the **System Settings** menu, access the **About Infotainment** menu and press the Restore button under **Restore Factory Defaults**.

WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Never proceed with settings while driving.

WARNING

Never reset the system while driving.

To make the best of the radio's features and optimal operation it is important that the date and time be correctly set. ◁

Transporting

Stowing cargo

Always safely store heavy loads on the bed and ensure even weight distribution. Always use suitable securing straps with the fastening rings to secure heavy objects. Never overload the vehicle. Both the payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle affect driving response and braking distance → ⚠.

Stow all items of luggage in the vehicle securely

- The vehicle or bed floors must be free from oil and dust, properly swept and dried in order to prevent cargoes from sliding.
- Check permitted axle cargoes and total permitted vehicle weight.
- Distribute cargoes on the vehicle over the roof and bed as evenly as possible.
- Heavy objects must be stowed between the rear axle and the front area of the bed.
- Avoid heavy single-point loads over the vehicle floor.
- Always distribute any loads in the vehicle as evenly as possible.
- Fasten objects in the luggage compartment to strapping eyelets with appropriate straps → page 120.
- Adjust tyre pressure according to the vehicle load. Refer to the tyre pressure sticker → page 176.
- In vehicles with tyre pressure control system, set the new load conditions when necessary → page 171.

WARNING

Objects that are not secured, or are secured incorrectly, can cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This applies particularly if objects are struck by the airbag when activated and then flung through the vehicle interior. Please apply the following rules to reduce the risk of accidents:

- Always stow all objects in the vehicle securely. Always stow luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment. ▶

- Always use suitable straps to prevent luggage from entering the deployment zones of the side airbag or the front airbag in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident.
- Objects should be stowed in the vehicle interior in such a way that they can never enter the airbag deployment zones while the vehicle is in motion.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while driving.
- Stowed objects must never cause passengers to assume an incorrect sitting position.
- Any seat blocked by stowed objects must not be used by any passengers.

WARNING

The vehicle handling and braking effect may alter significantly if large or heavy objects are being transported.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Accelerate carefully and gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than in normal driving.

Observe information regarding towing and → page 125, *Towing a trailer* luggage carriers → page 123, *Roof rack*. ◁

Luggage compartment

Introduction

Always stow heavy objects on the front area of the bed instead of inside the vehicle.

WARNING

When the vehicle is not in use, always lock the doors and dropside to reduce the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle, especially when the bed cover is open. Children could climb into the bed and shut the bed cover. In these situations, children would not be able to leave the bed by themselves. This could lead to severe or fatal injuries.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Never travel in the bed.

WARNING

Objects that are not secured, or are secured incorrectly, can cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This applies particularly if objects are struck by the airbag when activated and then flung through the vehicle interior. Please apply the following rules to reduce the risk of accidents:

- Always stow all objects in the vehicle securely. Always stow luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment.
- Always fasten objects with appropriate strapping tapes or tension belts.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while driving.
- Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp objects in any of the vehicle's open stowage areas, on the luggage compartment cover or on the dashboard without proper securing.
- Remove any hard, heavy or sharp objects from items of clothing and bags inside the vehicle and stow them securely.

WARNING

Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle's handling and increases the braking distance. Heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured in the vehicle can lead to a loss of vehicle control and can cause serious injuries.

- Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle's handling and the centre of gravity.
- The payload should be distributed as evenly as possible in the vehicle.
- Always secure heavy objects as far back into the luggage compartment as possible.

NOTICE

Hard objects could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage. ◁

Cargo or luggage stowage

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 120.

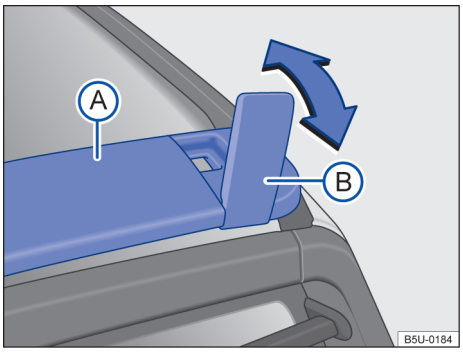


Fig. 117 On the roof: cross member and pivot support.

Depending on the vehicle version, the cross member and pivot support may not be available.

Use only the roof cross strut → Fig. 117 Ⓐ and articulated supports Ⓑ to support larger objects that do not fit the luggage compartment → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Use pivot supports to fasten light objects (e.g. surfboards) that cannot be adequately stowed on the bed floor.

ⓘ The maximum load supported by the roof cross member is 45 kg.

ⓘ All cargo and luggage must be safely stowed, using strapping supports, roof cross member, and pivot supports when available. ◁

Strapping eyelets

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 120.

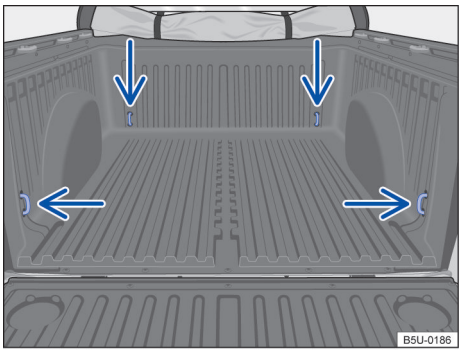


Fig. 118 Bed: strapping eyelets.

There are strapping eyelets on the luggage compartment to fasten objects → Fig. 118 (arrows).

The maximum strapping eyelets' traction load is 300 kgf (approximately 3,000 N).

Check the luggage compartment capacity in → page 220.

⚠ WARNING

Improper or damaged strapping tapes or tension belts may break during braking manoeuvres or in case of accidents. In this case, objects may be projected towards the vehicle, causing severe or fatal injuries.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps or tension belts.
- Safely attach strapping tapes or tension belts on strapping eyelets.
- Loose objects on the bed may suddenly slide and change the vehicle's direction.
- Also attach light and small objects.
- Never exceed the maximum strapping eyelet traction capacity.

ⓘ Appropriate cargo protection systems and tension belts may be acquired from qualified workshops. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose. ◁

Fixed strapping supports

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 120.

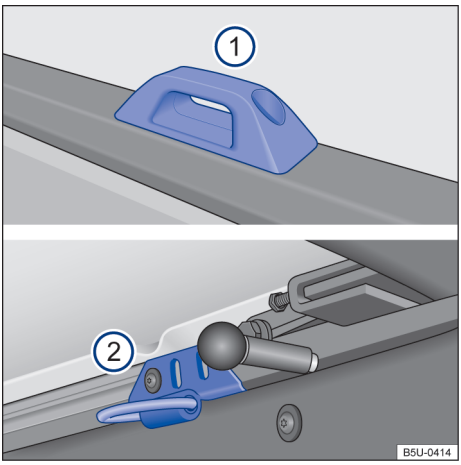


Fig. 119 On the bed: fixed supports ① for vehicles without bed canvas and ② for vehicles with bed canvas.

Depending on the vehicle version, fixed strapping supports may not be available.

Fixed strapping supports → Fig. 119 assist in load or luggage distribution on the luggage compartment. ◁

Sliding strapping supports

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 120.

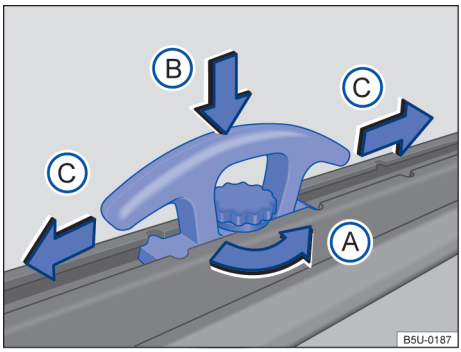


Fig. 120 On the bed: sliding support for vehicles without bed canvas.

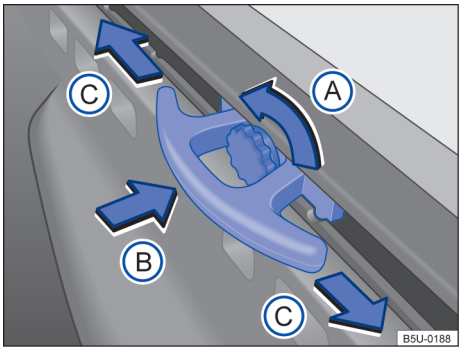


Fig. 121 On the bed: sliding support for vehicles with bed canvas.

Depending on the vehicle version, sliding strapping supports may not be available.

Sliding strapping supports → Fig. 120 or → Fig. 121 assist in load or luggage distribution on the luggage compartment.

Adjusting sliding support positions

In both versions → Fig. 120 or → Fig. 121, adjusting sliding support positions is based on the following concept:

– To release the support, turn the handle in the direction of the arrow Ⓐ.

– Firmly press the support in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ and, simultaneously, slid through the track in the direction of the arrows Ⓒ, until ▶

the appropriate locking position. Locking positions are determined by locks throughout the track.

– To fasten the support → ⚠, turn the handle in the opposite direction indicated by the arrow Ⓐ.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure that sliding supports are properly fastened in locking positions throughout the track before driving. Otherwise, loads or luggage may become loose. ◁

Luggage compartment access step

🕮 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 120.

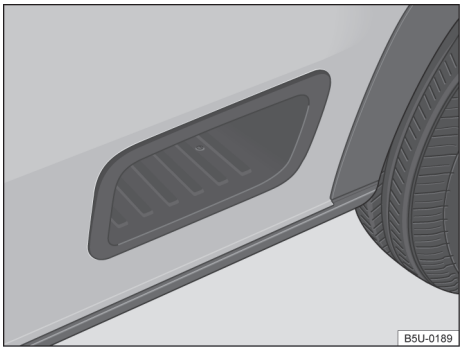


Fig. 122 On the vehicle's side: bed access step.

Depending on the vehicle version, luggage compartment climbing step may not be available.

The foot step support → Fig. 122 is provided in each side of the vehicle, facilitating access to the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Only use the lateral steps to access the cargo compartment, for example, when loading or unloading the vehicle.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- When accessing the luggage compartment, be careful not to damage the vehicle paint.
- The maximum admissible load over each step is 120 kg. ◁

Roof rack

🕮 Introduction

The roof rack only applies to some New Saveiro versions.

The vehicle is provided with two vertical ribs, and cross struts may be acquired at Volkswagen Dealerships.

The vehicle's roof was designed to optimize aerodynamics.

Only additional roof rack supports cleared by Volkswagen may be used.

When should the roof rack cross members be removed:

– When they're no longer necessary, thus sparing fuel, the wind noise is reduced and theft of the roof rack is avoided.

– When the vehicle passes through an auto-wash system.

– When the vehicle level exceeds the maximum passage height in a garage, for example.

⚠ WARNING

When transporting heavy or large objects in the roof carrier, vehicle driving conditions are altered due to the shift of the gravity centre and increased wind resistance surface.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps or tension belts.
- Heavy, large, long or flat loads negatively affect the vehicle's aerodynamics, centre of gravity and driving behaviour.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- Remove the roof carrier before submitting the vehicle into an auto-wash system.
- The vehicle level is altered after assembling a roof carrier and stowing loads. Compare the vehicle level with available passage heights, for example, in road bridges and garage doors. ▶

- The roof antenna must not be impaired by the roof carrier and the carried load.

Remove roof rack cross beams when not in use, preventing unnecessary fuel consumption due to greater aerodynamic resistance. ◁

Using the roof rack

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 123.

Fig. 123 Roof rack longitudinal supports (both sides).

The longitudinal supports are but the base for a complete load transport system and are supplied with the vehicle. For luggage transport, **additional cross beams** are necessary for safety reasons. For safety reasons, exclusive additional supports are required when transporting luggage, bicycles, surf boards, skiing equipment, and boats. Additional accessories can be acquired at Volkswagen Dealerships.

Conventional roof carriers must not be installed in vertical ribs. We recommend that only roof rack cross beams homologated by Volkswagen are used.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly fastening base supports and roof carriers, as well as its incorrect use, may cause the entire system to detach from the roof, resulting in injuries and accidents.

- If additional cross members homologated by Volkswagen are not used or are improperly fixed, the transported load or the roof rack itself may fall off the vehicle roof.
- Always follow the instructions provided in the owner's manual.
- Only use roof carriers when base supports are properly fastened and the roof carrier presents proper use conditions.
- Correctly mount the roof rack cross members.
- Check fastening points before driving and retighten them after short drives if necessary. In case of long hauls, check the bolt and fastening spots upon each stop.
- Always assemble special roof carriers for bicycles, skiing equipment, surf boards, etc. correctly.
- Do not modify or repair roof carriers and base supports.

ⓘ NOTICE

Always observe roof carrier cross beam manufacturer's installation instructions.

- Keep roof carrier manufacturer's installation and use instructions along with the vehicle's documents.

ⓘ NOTICE

Damages caused by improper roof carrier fastening are not covered by the warranty.

- The vehicle level is altered after assembling a roof carrier and stowing loads. Compare the vehicle level with available passage heights, for example, in road bridges and garage doors.

Read and follow installation instructions provided along with the roof carrier, always keeping such instructions in the vehicle.

It is paramount to know applicable laws regarding the sizes of volumes transported over vehicle roofs. ◁

Loading the roof carrier

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 123.

The load may be safely fastened when a roof rack system homologated by Volkswagen is used and is properly mounted → ⚠. ▶

Maximum roof weight permitted

The maximum roof weight permitted is **45 kg**. The roof load encompasses the weight of the roof carrier and the load to be transported over the roof → ⚠.

Always mind the weight of the roof carrier and load to be transported. Never exceed the maximum roof load permitted.

When using roof carriers with lower load capacities, the maximum roof load permitted may not be used. In this case, the roof carrier may only be loaded until the weight limit indicated in its installation instructions.

Distributing load

Evenly distribute the load between the members and along their full length → ⚠.

Controlling fastening points

After the roof rack members were fastened, check them after a short drive and subsequently at regular intervals.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and severe injuries can occur if the maximum permitted roof weight is exceeded.

- Never exceed the maximum roof weight permitted, maximum axle weight permitted and the total vehicle weight permitted.
- Never exceed the roof carrier load capacity, even if under the maximum roof load capacity. In this case load the roof rack beams only to the weight limit indicated by the manufacturer's instructions.
- Fasten heavy objects as far ahead as possible and uniformly distribute the load.

⚠ WARNING

Loose or incorrectly fastened loads may fall from the roof carrier and cause accidents and injuries.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps or tension belts.
- Properly fasten loads.

Sometimes the roof rack beams remain mounted even if they're not longer necessary. Due to the greater aerodynamic resistance, the vehicle will unnecessarily consume more fuel. Therefore remove the roof rack beams when no longer in use.

The load transported on the roof must be properly fastened. Transporting loads on the roof changes the vehicle's behaviour. ◁

Towing a trailer

Introduction

Observe any country-specific regulations when towing a trailer and using a towing bracket.

Your car is intended mainly for transporting passengers and luggage. However, it can also be used to tow a trailer or caravan, provided that it is fitted with the appropriate technical equipment. This additional maximum trailer weight will affect the durability, fuel consumption and performance of the vehicle and, in certain circumstances, can shorten the service intervals.

Driving with a trailer not only places an extra load on the vehicle, but also requires increased concentration on the part of the driver.

In low temperatures, fit winter tyres to both the vehicle **and** the trailer.

⚠ WARNING

It is dangerous to transport people in a trailer and it may also be illegal.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket can cause injury and accidents.

- Only use the towing bracket if it is fitted properly and is not damaged.
- Do not perform any modifications or repairs to the towing bracket.

⚠ WARNING

Towing a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky items can change the way the vehicle's handling and cause accidents.

- Therefore, observing the instructions below is essential to ensure the safety of the driver, passengers, and other road users. ▶

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity are more likely to tip over than trailers with a low centre of gravity.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Take special care when overtaking.
- Reduce your speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.
- When towing a trailer do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph). This also applies to countries where higher speeds are permitted Always obey speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers.
- Never try to "stop" a trailer from snaking by increasing your speed.

In new vehicles, do not tow a trailer during the first 1,000 km → page 85, *Running-in*. ◁

Technical requirements

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 125.

Only use a towing bracket which is approved for the gross weight of the trailer you wish to tow. The towing bracket must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be securely bolted to the vehicle's chassis. Always check and follow the data provided by the towing bracket manufacturer.

Towing brackets fitted to the rear bumper

Never fit a towing bracket to the rear bumper or to its fastening. A towing bracket must not prevent the rear bumper from functioning correctly. Do not carry out any alterations to the exhaust or brake systems. Check regularly to see if the towing bracket is fitted securely.

Engine cooling system

There is an increased load on the engine and the cooling system when towing a trailer. The cooling system must contain sufficient coolant and be able to cope with the extra load added by the trailer.

Trailer brake

If the trailer is equipped with its own brake system, observe any legal requirements. The trailer's brake system must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

Emergency breakaway cable

Always use the emergency breakaway cable between your vehicle and the trailer → page 127.

Rear trailer lights

The rear lights on the trailer must meet legal requirements → page 127.

Never connect the trailer lights directly to the electrical system of your vehicle. If you are uncertain whether the trailer has been connected correctly, please contact a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

Exterior mirrors

you are unable to see the traffic behind the trailer in the vehicle's standard exterior mirrors, additional exterior mirrors should be fitted in accordance with any country-specific regulations. Before setting off, adjust the mirrors so that you have a sufficient view of the rear.

⚠ WARNING

If the towing bracket is unsuitable or incorrectly fitted, the trailer can become detached from the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

NOTICE

- The vehicle electronics may be damaged if the trailer lights are not connected properly.
- The vehicle electronics may be damaged if the trailer uses too much electricity.
- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other sources of electricity. Use only suitable connectors to supply power to the trailer. ▶

Volkswagen recommends additional services between the normal inspection intervals if the vehicle is used frequently for towing a trailer. ◁

Engaging and connecting the trailer

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 125.

Emergency breakaway cable

Always fasten the emergency breakaway cable properly in the towing vehicle. In this case, leave some slack for the breakaway cable to allow curves. However, the breakaway cable must not drag on the ground while driving.

Rear trailer lights

Ensure that the rear trailer lights are functioning properly and are in compliance with legal requirements.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or incorrectly connected electrical cables may power the trailer, cause malfunctions in the vehicle electronics and cause severe injuries.

- All activities regarding the electrical system can only be conducted by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.
- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other sources of electricity.

NOTICE

A trailer parked over the support wheel or over the trailer supports must not be connected to the vehicle. For example, the vehicle is lifted or lowered due to load changes or tyre damages. In this case, major forces act over the trailer bracket and over the trailer, which may damage the vehicle and the trailer.

If the engine is not running and electrical equipment is switched on in the trailer via the trailer socket, the vehicle battery will discharge. ◁

Loading the trailer

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 125.

Maximum trailer weight and drawbar load

The maximum trailer weight is the weight that the vehicle can pull → ⚠. The drawbar load is the weight that the towing bracket exerts on the ball coupling vertically from above → page 213.

The figures for maximum trailer weight and draw bar weights that are given on the data plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes only. The correct values for your specific model, which may be *lower* than these figures, are provided in the vehicle registration documents. All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over this data.

In the interest of road safety, Volkswagen recommends that you always transport the maximum **drawbar load**. The response of the trailer on the road will be poor if the drawbar load is too small.

The drawbar load increases the weight on the rear axle and reduces the maximum load level as a result.

Gross combination weight

The gross combination weight is comprised of actual loaded vehicle and loaded trailer weights.

Loading the trailer

The weight of the load should be distributed evenly. The maximum permitted drawbar load should be utilised. Do not place the load only at the front or the rear of the trailer:

– Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are either over or as near to the axle as possible.
– Secure all loads on the trailer properly.

Tyre pressure

Follow the trailer manufacturer's recommendations concerning the tyre pressure for the trailer tyres.

When towing a trailer, inflate the wheels on the towing vehicle with the maximum permitted tyre pressure → page 171. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can occur if you exceed the vehicle's maximum permitted gross axle weight rating, drawbar load, gross vehicle weight rating or gross combination weight rating.

- Never exceed the specified values.
- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the gross axle weight ratings. Never exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle with weight at the front and rear of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Moving loads can severely impair the vehicle's stability and driving safety, which can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always load trailers correctly.
- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps. ◁

Towing a trailer

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 125.**

Headlight adjustment

Towing a trailer can raise the front end of the vehicle enough for the dipped beam to blind other road users. The headlights must be adjusted in a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

Things to note when driving with a trailer

– If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first*, and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.
– The gross combination weight causes the braking distance to increase.
– Select a low gear before driving down a hill. This enables you to use the engine braking effect to slow down the vehicle. The brake system could otherwise overheat and fail.
– The vehicle's centre of gravity and the vehicle's handling will change because of the maximum trailer weight and the increased combined towing weight of the vehicle and trailer.
– The weight distribution of a loaded trailer with an unladen towing vehicle is very unfavourable. When driving in this situation, drive particularly carefully and slowly.

Pulling off on hills when towing a trailer

Depending on the steepness of the slope and the total weight of the trailer and vehicle, a parked vehicle towing a trailer could roll back a short distance when moving off on a hill.

When towing a trailer, pull off on hills as follows:

– Pull the handbrake.
– Press and hold the brake pedal.
– Press the clutch fully.
– Engage the 1st gear.
– Release the brake pedal.
– Slowly release the clutch.
– Only let go of the handbrake lever when the engine has sufficient power to move off.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect trailer towing can cause loss of vehicle control and severe personal injuries.

- Towing a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky items can change the way the vehicle's handling and increase the braking distance.
- Always drive carefully and defensively. Brake earlier than in normal driving.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Reduce your speed, especially when going downhill.
- Accelerate carefully and gently. Avoid abrupt and sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Take special care when overtaking. Reduce your speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.
- Never try to “stop” a trailer from snaking by increasing your speed.
- In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers. ◁

Retrofitting a towing bracket

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 125.

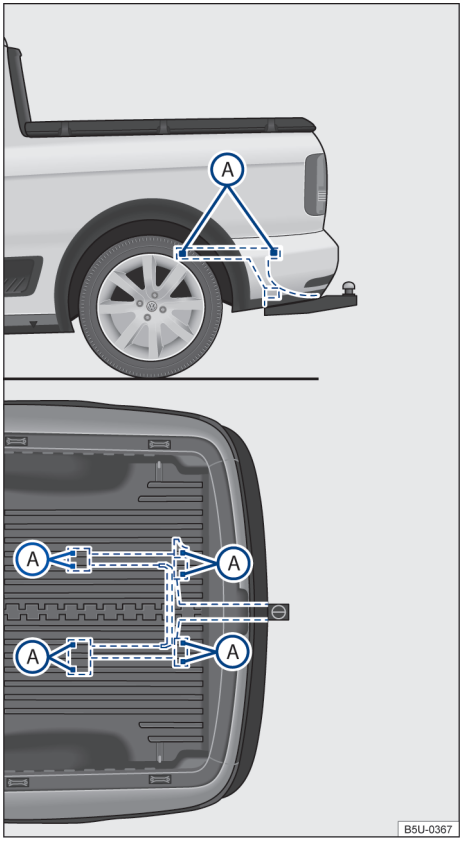


Fig. 124 Attachment points for retrofitting a towing bracket.

Figure → Fig. 124 illustrates, as an example, the fastening point to retrofit a towing bracket in the New Saveiro model.

Towing bracket retrofitting must be executed in accordance with the instructions provided by the bracket's manufacturer, always considering the attachment points indicated in → Fig. 124 (A).

The towing bracket securing points can be seen from the lower part of the vehicle. The towing bracket must be secured to such points.

Retrofitting a towing bracket

– Observe applicable laws in the country in which the vehicle will run.
– It might be necessary to disassemble and reassemble the rear bumper. Additionally, it is also necessary to tighten the towing bracket screws with a torque meter and connect a socket to the vehicle's electrical system. For such, special tools and expertise are required.
– The figure indicates securing points that must be observed when installing towing brackets.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or incorrectly connected electrical conductors may cause operating faults in all of the vehicle's electronic components, which may cause severe accidents and injuries.

- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other improper sources of electricity. Use only suitable connectors for trailer connection.
- Trailer bracket retrofitting activities must be conducted by a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

If the towing bracket is unsuitable or incorrectly fitted, the trailer can become detached from the vehicle. This could lead to severe accidents and fatal injuries.

NOTICE

Towing a trailer represents a greater stress for the vehicle. Before deciding to **retrofit**, contact a Volkswagen Dealership to know if it is necessary to perform any modifications in the cooling system or if thermal shielding plates must be installed. ◁

Fuel handling safety guidelines

WARNING

Filling the tank incorrectly and improper handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire and serious burns and injuries.

- Always ensure that the tank cap is closed properly to prevent the evaporation and spillage of fuel.
- Fuel is highly explosive and inflammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.
- Fuel can spill out if the engine is not switched off or the filler nozzle is not fully inserted into the fuel filler neck when filling the tank. This may cause fires, explosions and serious burns and injuries.
- When filling the tank with fuel, the engine and the ignition must be switched off for safety reasons.
- When filling the tank, always switch off your mobile telephone and two-way radio or any other radio equipment. Electromagnetic radiation can generate sparks which can in turn start a fire.
- When filling the tank, never get into the vehicle. If in exceptional cases you have to enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal object before touching the filler nozzle again. This will remove any spark-generating electrostatic charges from you. Sparks can cause a fire when filling the tank.
- Never fill the tank or fill up a spare canister near open flames, sparks or glowing items (e.g. cigarettes).
- Electrostatic discharge and electromagnetic radiation must be avoided when filling the tank.
- Follow all applicable safety information provided by the filling station when filling the tank.
- Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

For safety reasons, Volkswagen does not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel can spill out of the full or empty canister and catch fire, especially in the event of an accident. This could cause explosions, fire and injuries.

- If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to transport a spare fuel canister, please note the following:
  - When refilling, never place the canister in or on top of the vehicle (e.g. in the luggage compartment). There may be an electrostatic charge during refilling causing the fuel fumes to ignite.
  - Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground.
  - When filling a spare fuel canister, place the filler nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening.
  - If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filler nozzle must have constant contact with the canister in order to avoid static charging.
  - Please follow all legislation concerning the use, stowage and transportation of spare fuel canisters.

NOTICE

- Remove spilt fuel from the vehicle paint as quickly as possible in order to avoid damage to the wheel housing, tyres and vehicle paint.
- Do not run the tank empty. Irregular filling periods can cause backfiring and allow unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system. This could damage the catalytic converter.

After the fuel filler nozzle is automatically switched off for the first time, the tank will have reached its capacity. Do not force fuel filling, since fuel may overflow.

- When filling, fuel may be spilt on the ground, polluting the environment. Always fill the at authorized filling stations with proper fluid collection and disposal systems. ◁

Fuelling and fuel types

Introduction

The fuel cap is located at the rear right-hand side of the vehicle.

The factory- fitted sticker on the inside of the tank flap indicates the fuel type that is required for the vehicle.

WARNING

Incorrect handling of fuel may cause explosions, fire and severe burns and injuries.

- Fuel is highly explosive and inflammable.
- For safety reasons, Volkswagen does not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel can spill out of the full or empty canister and catch fire, especially in the event of an accident. This could cause explosions, fires and severe injuries.
- In exceptional cases, when it is necessary to transport spare fuel canisters, the instructions in → page 131, *Fuelling and fuel types* must be followed.
- Never handle fuel near open flames, sparks or glowing items (e.g. lighters).
- Switch off your mobile telephone or two-way radio when dealing with fuel. Electromagnetic radiation can generate sparks which can in turn start a fire.
- Electrostatic discharge and electromagnetic radiation must not be generated near fuels.
- Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment.
- Observe any valid safety information and legislation concerning the handling of fuels.

NOTICE

- If the TOTALFLEX vehicle is immobilized by "**lack of fuel**", the vehicle must be refilled with the last type of fuel used - petrol or ethanol.
- If it is necessary to fill the tank with a different type of fuel, the following may occur:
  - Cold starting difficulties.
  - Considerable decrease in engine performance.
- The vehicle must run for approximately 5 kilometres to recognize the new fuel type, in order to prevent any of the scenarios above.

NOTICE

For vehicles with TSI engines: if there is an option to refuel the vehicle exclusively with Ethanol-type fuel, it is recommended that every 10,000 km the vehicle be refueled with at least one full tank of gasoline. This recommendation is mandatory to observe, and aims to prevent the accumulation of contaminating matter arising from the characteristics of Ethanol. This possible accumulation of contaminating matter in the fuel supply system can result in loss of engine performance or even difficulties in starting the vehicle.

After the fuel filler nozzle is automatically switched off for the first time, the tank will have reached its capacity. Do not force fuel filling, since fuel may overflow.

- When filling, fuel may be spilt on the ground, polluting the environment. Always fill the at authorized filling stations with proper fluid collection and disposal systems.

When the airbags are triggered during an accident, the fuel supply is interrupted → page 36, *In case of airbag triggering - Crash detection function*. ◁

Petrol engine

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 131.

Petrol

Vehicles with a petrol engine must be driven using **unleaded petrol free from any metallic additives (such as manganese)**, in accordance with applicable country laws.

Petrol additives

The quality of petrol influences the running properties, performance and service life of the engine. Therefore, fuel up with quality fuel and, when necessary, use the adequate additives.

The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Metallic petrol additives should be avoided at all times. ▶

NOTICE

- The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter.
- If, in an emergency, you have to use petrol with higher or lower anhydrous ethanol proportions, drive at medium engine speeds and avoid high engine loading. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads. Failure to do so can result in engine damage! Fill the tank with the recommended petrol as soon as possible.

Just one tank full of leaded fuel, or fuel containing other metallic additives (such as manganese), can seriously impair the efficiency and cause damages to the catalytic converter. ◁

TOTALFLEX engine

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 131.

Petrol

Vehicles must be driven using **unleaded petrol free from any metallic additives (such as manganese)**, with RON 95/E24 (blue) ethanol percentage.

Petrol additives

The quality of petrol influences the running properties, performance and service life of the engine. Therefore, fuel up with quality fuel and, when necessary, use the adequate additives.

The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Metallic petrol additives should be avoided at all times.

Ethanol

The vehicle must be fuelled exclusively with **hydrated ethanol**, in accordance with applicable country laws.

NOTICE

- The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter.
- If, in an emergency, you have to use fuel different than specified, drive at medium engine speeds and avoid high engine loading. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads. Failure to do so can result in engine damage! Fill the tank with the recommended petrol as soon as possible.
- Just one tank full of leaded fuel, or fuel containing other metallic additives (such as manganese), can seriously impair the efficiency and cause considerable damages to the catalytic converter. ◁

Filling the tank with petrol or ethanol

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 131.

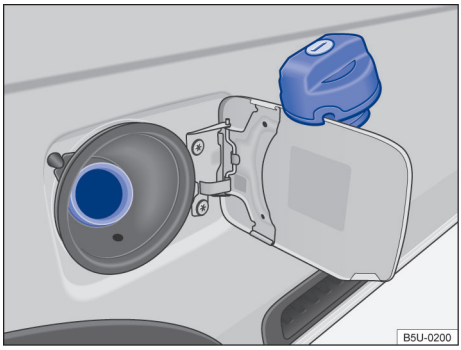


Fig. 125 Open tank flap with tank cap attached to the holder.

Switch off the engine, ignition and the mobile telephones **before** filling the tank and leave them switched off during the process.

Vehicles with TOTALFLEX engine were designed to use **both petrol and ethanol in any amount**.

Check the fuel tank capacity in → page 220.

Opening the tank flap

– The tank flap is located at the rear of the vehicle on the right.
– Open the tank flap by pulling it from the crease in the vehicle body work.
– Unfold the vehicle key bit, if necessary → page 45.
– Insert the key in the tank flap lock cylinder and turn anticlockwise.
– Screw the cap anticlockwise and hang it over the tank flap → Fig. 125. ▶

Filling the tank

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is shown on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap → page 131.

– The fuel tank is *full* when the filler nozzle clicks off for the first time → ⚠.
– Do not continue filling the tank after it switches off! The expansion space in the fuel tank will otherwise fill up and the fuel could spill out. This could also happen when the fuel warms up and expands.

Closing the tank cap

– Turn the tank cap clockwise into the fuel filler neck until you hear it engage.
– Turn the vehicle key in the tank flap lock cylinder clockwise and remove it.
– Close the tank flap. The tank flap must be flush with the vehicle bodywork.

⚠ WARNING

Do not continue filling the tank once the filler nozzle stops automatically. The fuel tank cannot be overfilled. This can cause fuel to splash out and overflow. This could cause explosions, fires and severe injuries.

NOTICE

- If the TOTALFLEX vehicle is immobilized by "**lack of fuel**", the vehicle must be refilled with the last type of fuel used - petrol or ethanol.
- If it is necessary to fill the tank with a different type of fuel, the following may occur:
  – Cold starting difficulties.
  – Considerable decrease in engine performance.
- The vehicle must run for approximately 5 kilometres to recognize the new fuel type, in order to prevent any of the scenarios above.

NOTICE

Remove spilt fuel from the vehicle paint as quickly as possible in order to avoid damage to the wheel housing, tyres and vehicle paint.

After the fuel filler nozzle is automatically switched off for the first time, the tank will have reached its capacity. Do not force fuel filling, since fuel may overflow.

- When filling, fuel may be spilt on the ground, polluting the environment. Always fill the at authorized filling stations with proper fluid collection and disposal systems. ◁

Engine control unit and exhaust gas emission control system

🕮 Introduction

⚠ WARNING

The exhaust system components become very hot. This may cause fires.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.
- Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, diesel particulate filter or the heat shields on the exhaust system. ◁

Electronic engine power control (EPC)

🕮 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 133.**

The electronic engine power control (EPC) is a system designed to determine the throttle valve position based on the torque required by the driver through the electronic pedal (e-gas system); the indicator lamp **EPC** lights up in the event of system malfunctions.

Under normal operating conditions, when the driver activates the accelerator pedal, the system transforms such request into a need for speed and power.

By controlling engine components (sensors and actuators), the best performance possible is calculated, based on the driver's request. ◁

Catalytic converter

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 133.

The catalytic converter is used for exhaust gas post-treatment and helps mitigate the emission of pollutants into the atmosphere. Observe the following points to ensure that the exhaust system and catalytic converter in the engine function properly for extended periods of time:

- Fill the tank only with unleaded petrol free from other metallic additives (such as manganese)
- Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry.
- Never overfill engine oil → page 158.
- Never push and/or pull the vehicle to start the engine ("push starting"), but rather use the jump starting system → page 151.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, reduce speed immediately. The vehicle should be inspected at the nearest Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. If this happens, unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the atmosphere. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating!

NOTICE

Just one tank full of leaded fuel, or fuel containing other metallic additives (such as manganese), can seriously impair the efficiency and cause damages to the catalytic converter.

Even when the exhaust purification system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust in some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel being used. Often, it is simply a case of using a different fuel brand. ◁

Lambda probe

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 133.

The purpose of the lambda probe is to monitor exhaust gases through a sensor hit by led or other metallic additives (e.g. manganese) contained in the fuel, and gradually reduced. The lambda probe completely loses its efficiency after 10,000 km. The resulting lack of monitoring could cause engine malfunctions, such as:

- changes in driving conditions;
- hot engine starting problems;
- increased fuel consumption. ◁

Activated charcoal filter - supply system

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 133.

The supply system has an activated charcoal system that accumulates hydrocarbons (steam) generated in the fuel tank (evaporative emission control), preventing such hydrocarbons from being released into the atmosphere. While the engine is running, these accumulated hydrocarbons are used in the normal engine combustion process.

The activated charcoal filter prevents fuel tank gas hydrocarbons from being released into the atmosphere. ◁

Troubleshooting

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 133.

If the engine operates irregularly or in case of engine jolts while driving, this could be related to insufficient fuel or low-quality fuel (e.g. water mixed in the fuel). When these signs appear, reduce speed immediately and go to the nearest authorised Volkswagen repairer, driving only at medium speed and with low engine demand. If these events occur immediately after filling the tank, switch off the engine immediately – also to avoid secondary damages – and seek assistance at an authorised Volkswagen repairer. ▶

Indicator lamps

EPC Engine management system fault (Electronic Power Control). **On:** the engine must immediately be checked at an authorised Volkswagen repairer

Faulty emissions in the exhaust system (OBD). **On:** slow down. Drive carefully to an authorised Volkswagen repairer. The engine must be checked.

Flashing: faulty catalytic converter. Reduce your speed. Carefully drive to the nearest Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. The engine must be checked.

When switching the ignition on, certain warning and indicator lamps flash to check functions. Such lamps go out after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any warning lamps or text messages that appear.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps and its descriptions and meanings could lead to vehicle damages.

If the indicator lamps or EPC are lit up, fuel consumption may be higher and engine performance reduced. ◁

Fuel quality

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 133.

Considering the impracticality of supervising all filling stations, Volkswagen recommends filling the tank in stations included in the Distributor Network, which have clear programs, in order to ensure product quality.

Volkswagen Dealerships are prepared to handle engine sediments.

Fuel injection system

The vehicle is equipped with a fuel injection system that, under normal circumstances, waives the need for any periodical cleaning process, either with fuel additives or disassembling the injection valves to clean ultrasound systems.

Cleaning is required whenever damages or improper engine function occur due to use of low-quality fuel. In this case, Volkswagen recommends visiting a Volkswagen, Dealership, which has suitable additives and equipment.

NOTICE

Damages caused on the engine due to the use of improper or insufficient fuel are not covered by the warranty. ◁

If and when

Vehicle toolkit

Introduction

Observe any country-specific legislation when securing your vehicle in the event of a breakdown.

WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, a loose vehicle toolkit and spare wheel could be flung though the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always ensure that the vehicle toolkit or spare wheel are secured in its respective housings.

WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged tools in the vehicle toolkit can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never work with unsuitable or damaged tools from the vehicle toolkit. ◁

Vehicle toolkit stowage and access - Single cab Saveiro

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 136.

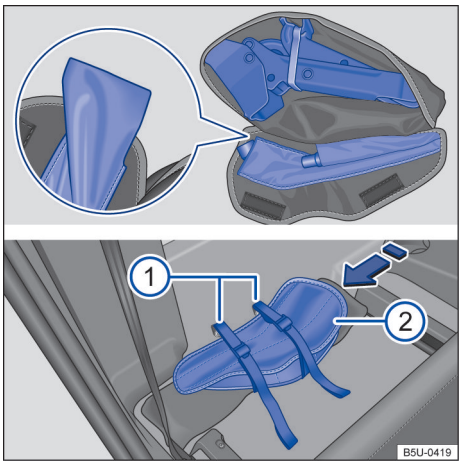


Fig. 126 Behind the passenger seat backrest: ① vehicle toolkit securing straps and ② vehicle toolkit bag.

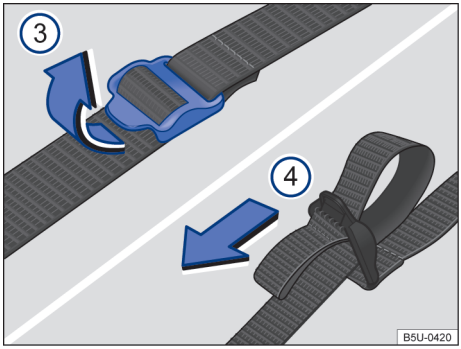


Fig. 127 Vehicle toolkit fastening straps.

The vehicle toolkit's placement varies depending on the vehicle version and/or model.

The passenger seat must be folded to access the vehicle toolkit → page 60. ▶

Retrieving the vehicle toolkit

– To access the tool bag of vehicles **with** the front seat backrest folding lever: fold down the passenger seat.
– To access the tool bag of vehicles **without** the front seat backrest folding lever: push the seat to the front.
– Pull the fastening strap buckles in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 127 ③.
– Retrieve the vehicle toolkit.

Placement of the tools in the bag

– After use of the vehicle tools, ensure they are correctly positioned in the vehicle tool bag.
– Fit the jack in the bag and fully close it → Fig. 126, with the jack base in the wider part of the bag.
– Insert the wheel wrench into the extractor hook to store in the tool bag.
– Fit the wheel wrench into its proper housing and ensure that the pawl → Fig. 126 (magnifying glass) is placed underneath the wheel wrench to prevent rattling when driving.
– Fit the emergency wheel adapter in its proper housing.

Returning the vehicle toolkit

– Place the vehicle toolkit bag behind the passenger seat, on top of the warning triangle and through the fastening straps, as per → Fig. 126 in the direction of the arrow.
– For correct securing of the toolkit, position same with the velcro straps of the bag turned forward → Fig. 126 ②.
– Firmly pull the straps ① in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 127 ④ to secure the toolkit.

Always ensure that the vehicle toolkit is properly fastened to the floor behind the passenger seat. ◁

Vehicle toolkit stowage and access - Double cab Saveiro

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 136.

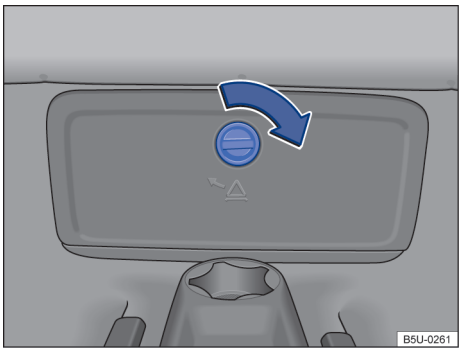


Fig. 128 On the rear seat floor: access to the vehicle toolkit housing.

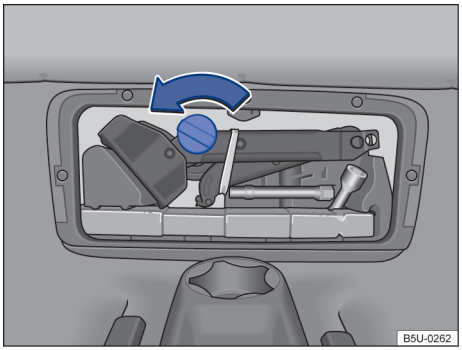


Fig. 129 Vehicle toolkit fastening handle.

The vehicle toolkit's placement varies depending on the vehicle version and/or model.

The passenger seat must be folded to access the vehicle toolkit → page 60.

Remove the vehicle toolkit

– Turn the knob in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 128 and remove the lining completely to access the vehicle toolkit.
– Turn the knob anticlockwise → Fig. 129 to unlock the jack and access the vehicle toolkit. ▶

Returning the vehicle toolkit

– Place the jack in the vehicle toolkit under the rear seat and turn the handle clockwise to lock it in place, secure the other tools in the vehicle toolkit.
– Position the vehicle toolkit lining and turn the knob counterclockwise to secure it in place → Fig. 128 .

Always make sure that the vehicle toolkit is correctly secured in the toolkit under the rear seat. ◁

Contents of the vehicle tool kit

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 136.

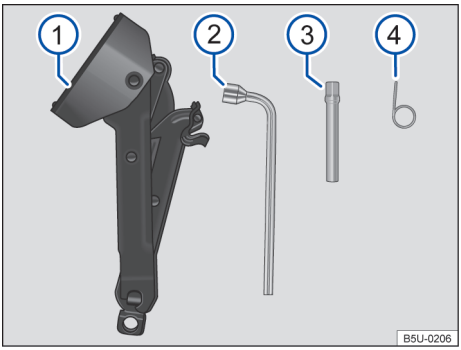


Fig. 130 Contents of the vehicle toolkit.

The content of the vehicle toolkit depends on the vehicle equipment level. The following describes the maximum scope.

Components of the vehicle toolkit. → Fig. 130

(1) Jack. Before reinserting the jack back into the toolkit, close the jack with the box spanner until reaching the stop, in order to prevent noises while driving.
(2) Lug wrench. Also used as a jack lever to lift the vehicle → page 186.
(3) Adapter to remove or fasten the spare wheel.
(4) Wire hook for pulling off the centre cover, wheel covers and the wheel bolt caps.

Turn the jack back to its original position after use so it may be securely stored. ◁

Wiper blades

Cleaning and replacing wiper blades - standard

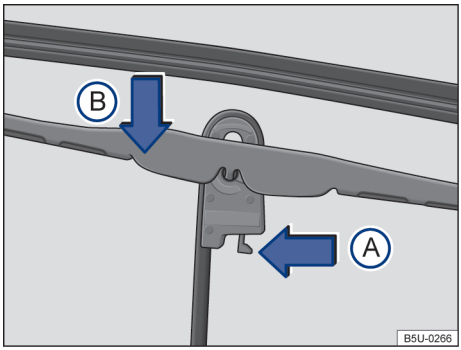


Fig. 131 Replacing windscreen wiper blades.

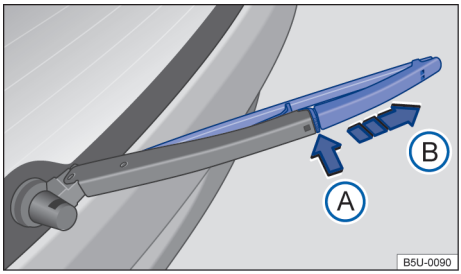


Fig. 132 Replacing the rear window wiper blades.

Standard window wiper blades may not be available, depending on the vehicle version.

The factory-fitted window wiper blades are coated with graphite. The graphite coating allows the window wiper blades to silently slide over the window and ensures optimal cleaning performance → ⓘ.

Check the condition of the window wiper blades on a regular basis. Replace the **window wiper blades** whenever they are dirty or are not performing properly → ⓘ.

Damaged window wiper blades must be replaced immediately. Window wiper blades can be bought at Volkswagen Dealerships or qualified workshops. ▶

Lift and fold out the window wiper arms.

To lift or fold out window wiper arms, hold them **only** by the blade attachment area.

Cleaning window wiper blades

– Lift and fold out the window wiper arms.
– Clean the window wiper blades carefully using a soft cloth → ⓘ.
– Lower the window wiper arms back onto the window.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

– Lift and fold the windscreen wiper arms.
– Position the wiper in a perpendicular position to the wiper arm → Fig. 131.
– Push the release lever as directed by the arrow Ⓐ.
– Disengage the wiper as indicated by arrow Ⓑ, move the wiper in the wiper arm´s opposite direction and remove the wiper in the opposite direction to the indicated by arrow Ⓑ.
– Insert a new wiper blade of the **same length and design** onto the wiper arm repeating the removal procedure in reverse until the wiper engages audibly.
– Ensure the new blade is correctly installed.
– Fold the windscreen wiper arms back onto the windscreen.

Replacing the rear window wiper blades

– Lift and fold the rear window wiper arm.
– Press and hold the release button → Fig. 132 Ⓐ at the same time pull off the windscreen wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.
– Remove the rear window wiper blade in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ.
– Insert a new rear window wiper blade of the **same length and design** into the rear window wiper arms until it is properly fitted.
– Fold the rear window wiper arm back towards the rear window.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty window wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Replace window wiper blades whenever they are damaged or worn, and no longer appropriately perform their function.

NOTICE

Do not attempt to recover or reapply the graphite layer of the window wiper blades. If this layer is damaged, replace the wiper blades.

NOTICE

- Damaged or dirty window wiper blades may scratch the window.
- Detergents containing solvents, hard sponges and other sharp objects can damage the graphite coating during cleaning.
- Do not use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows. ◁

Cleaning and replacing window wiper blades - Aerowischer

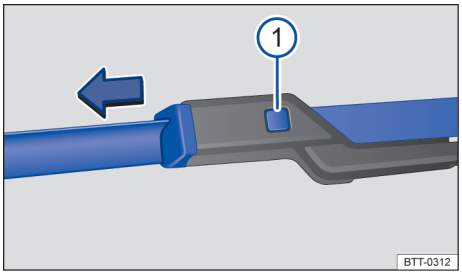


Fig. 133 Replacing windscreen wiper blades.

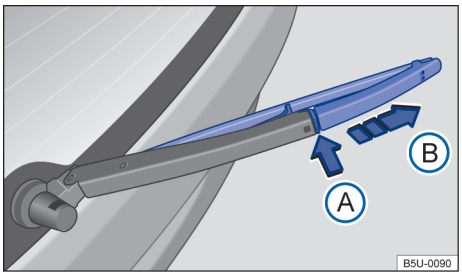


Fig. 134 Replacing the rear window wiper blades.

Aerowischer window wiper blades may not be available, depending on the vehicle version.

The factory-fitted window wiper blades are coated with graphite. The graphite coating allows the windscreen wiper blades to silently slide over the window and ensures optimal cleaning performance → ⓘ. ▶

Check the condition of the window wiper blades on a regular basis. Replace the **window wiper blades** whenever they are dirty or are not performing properly → ⓘ.

Damaged windscreen wiper blades must immediately be replaced. Wiper blades can be bought at an authorised Volkswagen repairer or qualified workshops.

Lift and fold out the window wiper arms.

To lift or fold out window wiper arms, hold them **only** by the blade attachment area.

Cleaning window wiper blades

– Lift and fold out the window wiper arms.
– Clean the window wiper blades carefully using a soft cloth → ⓘ.
– Lower the window wiper arms back onto the window.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

– Lift and fold the windscreen wiper arms.
– Press and hold the release button → Fig. 133 ① and pull off the windscreen wiper blade in the direction of the arrow
– Insert the new wiper blade of the **same length and design** into the wiper arms until it is properly fitted.
– Fold the windscreen wiper arms back onto the windscreen.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty window wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Replace window wiper blades whenever they are damaged or worn, and no longer appropriately perform their function.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Do not attempt to recover or reapply the graphite layer of the window wiper blades. If this layer is damaged, replace the windscreen wiper blades.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- Damaged or dirty window wiper blades may scratch the window.
- Detergents containing solvents, hard sponges and other sharp objects can damage the graphite coating during cleaning.
- Do not use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows. ◁

Exterior lighting

Introduction

Before repairing the product, check which technology is used, bulb or LED. As rule of thumb, light bulbs can be replaced by yourself. When, according to the vehicle version, the exterior lighting is of LED technology, the replacement of the LED light unit or of the individual LEDs by yourself is not possible. The burning out of individual LEDs may be an indication of possible burn outs of other LEDs. In such case, the lights must be checked, and if necessary, replaced by a specialized workshop.

Changing the vehicle bulbs requires considerable technical skill. If you do not feel confident with the procedure, Volkswagen recommends that you have the bulbs changed by a Volkswagen Dealership or that you seek other expert assistance. Contact a qualified workshop if other vehicle parts around the lights need to be removed.

A box containing spare light bulbs for lights that are required to ensure that the vehicle is roadworthy should be stored in the vehicle at all times. Spare bulbs are available from Volkswagen Dealerships.

Driving with burned out exterior lighting devices may be illegal.

Additional bulb specifications

Some bulbs in headlights or in tail light clusters might have factory specifications that are different than standard bulbs. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

LED technology in vehicles

Components that use LEDs in vehicles have a long service life and do not require frequent replacement.

Volkswagen recommends that the replacement of components that use LED be done at a Volkswagen dealership. ▶

Vehicle components that use LEDs are listed below:

– **Side turn signal lamp:** located in exterior mirrors.
– **Brake light bulb:** located above the rear window, outside the vehicle.

WARNING

Despite being illegal, driving with burnt bulbs may cause accidents. Burnt bulbs must be replaced as soon as possible.

- Insufficient lighting of roads, such as streets, avenues and squares, results in low visibility and increases the risk of accidents, since other road users might be unable to see vehicles running with burnt bulbs.

WARNING

Changing the bulb incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Before initiating any work in the engine compartment, always read and observe the warnings → page 154, *Safety guidelines for work in the engine compartment*. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area and may cause severe injuries.
- Only change the defective bulb once it has had time to cool down completely.
- Never change a bulb unless you are familiar with the procedure. If you are uncertain of what to do, the work should be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. When the light is switched on, heat will cause fingerprints to evaporate on the bulb which will causes the reflector to “dim”.
- There are sharp-edged parts in the headlight housing in the engine compartment and on the tail light cluster housing. Protect your hands when changing a bulb.

NOTICE

Damage to the electrical system can be caused if the rubber covers of the headlight housing are not properly mounted – especially due to water entering the system.

NOTICE

Volkswagen recommends special attention to some plastic parts with clamps, which might break when removing or fitting bulbs.

Depending on the vehicle version, there may be two lighting reflectors in the rear bumper that are not equipped with bulbs. However, if these elements break and need to be replaced, visit a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

On cold and humid days the headlight lenses may become temporarily fogged because of the difference of temperature between the outside and the inside.

- With the headlight turned on, the outgoing light surface defogs in a short time, eventually leaving some residues at the borders.
- The tail lights and the turn signals may also be affected.
- The fogging phenomenon does not interfere with the life cycle of the lighting system of the vehicle. ◁

Information on changing bulbs

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 141.

Checklist

Always carry out the following actions for changing a bulb in the given order→ ⚠:

1. Park the vehicle on a flat and solid surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
2. Apply the handbrake → page 95.
3. Turn the light switch to position **0** → page 63.
4. Shift the turn signal lever to the neutral position → page 63.
5. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition cylinder → page 86.
6. Select a gear → page 89.
7. Switch off the orientation lighting → page 63.
8. Let the defective bulb cool down.
9. Check to see if a fuse has blown → page 147. ▶

Checklist (Continued)

10. Change the faulty bulb as instructed→ ⓘ; use a flashlight if necessary. Always use identical bulbs with the same designation. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.
11. Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. The heat of the bulb would cause the fingerprint to evaporate and condense on the reflector, compromising the brightness of the headlight.
12. After changing the bulb, check to make sure that the bulb is working properly. If the bulb is not working properly, the bulb may not have been inserted properly or may have failed again, or the connector may have been inserted incorrectly.
13. Each time you change a bulb in the front of the vehicle, the headlight settings should be checked by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Always follow the instructions on the checklist and comply with applicable safety precautions.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Always take care when removing or fitting lights to prevent damage to the paintwork or to other vehicle parts.

Burnt bulbs must not be disposed of as common trash, since they contain residues that are potentially harmful to the environment.

In order to help preserve the environment, Volkswagen recommends returning burnt bulbs to a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop, in order for them to be properly disposed of based on specific legal requirements regarding handling, storage and disposal. ◁

Changing headlight bulbs - standard headlights

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 141.

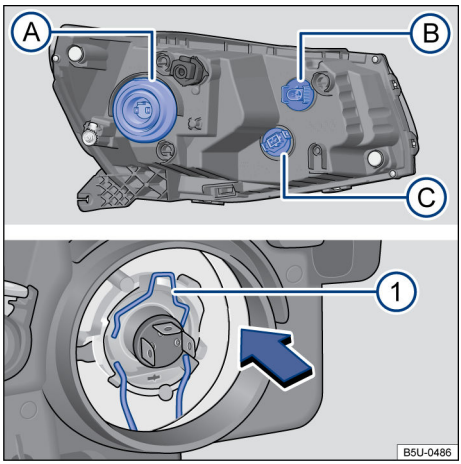


Fig. 135 In the engine compartment: rear view of the headlight with rubber cover (left side of illustration) - Ⓐ dipped beam / main beam, Ⓑ B daytime running light / side light and Ⓒ turn signals. Rear view of the front headlight without the rubber cover (right-hand side of the illustration): ① locking spring of the dipped beam / main beam headlight bulb.

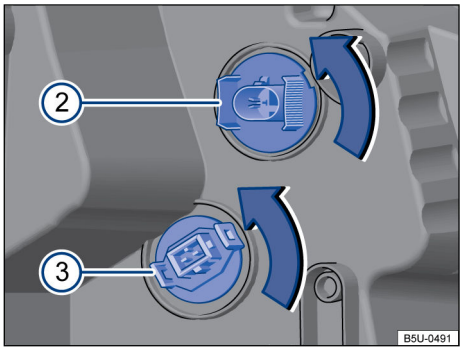


Fig. 136 In the engine compartment: rear view of the front headlight ② daytime running light / side light and ③ turn signals.

In the engine compartment, the headlights are partially covered by other vehicle parts. Volkswagen recommends changing bulbs at a Volkswagen Dealership in case of doubt. ▶

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

1. Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 141.
2. Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 154.
3. Disengage the bulb connector.
4. **Main beam / dipped beam** A, remove the rubber cover on the rear part of the headlight (A).

   Running light and side light B, turn the bulb holder (2) in the direction of the arrow and remove it from the socket.

   Turn signals C, turn the bulb socket (3), in the direction of the arrow, and remove it.
5. **Dipped beam / main beam** A, press the locking spring in the direction of the arrow (1) and move it to release the bulb.

   Running light and side light B, pull the defective bulb from its holder to remove it.

   Turn signals B, press on the defective bulb and turn it to remove it.
6. **Dipped beam / main beam** A, move the spring to remove the defective bulb from its housing.
7. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
8. **Dipped beam / main beam** A, insert the new bulb into the housing with the largest socket reference flap facing up.

   Running light and side light B, insert the new bulb into the holder.

   Turn signals C, insert the new bulb into the holder, press on the bulb and turn it as far as possible.
9. **Dipped beam / main beam** A, press the locking spring and secure it in the holder to secure the bulb.

   Running light and side light B and **turn signals** C, make sure that the holder is correctly attached to the assembly.
10. **Dipped beam / main beam** A , remove the rubber cover on the rear part of the headlight A .

    Running light and side light B, turn the bulb holder (2) in the direction of the arrow and remove it from the socket.

    Turn signals C,, turn the bulb holder (3) in the direction of the arrow and remove it from the socket.
11. **Dipped beam / main beam** A, reinsert the rubber cover securely in place. Ensure that the connection terminals do not damage the rubber cover.

    Running light and side light B and **turn signals** C, make sure that the holder is correctly attached to the assembly.
12. Fit the bulb connector, pressing it as far down as possible.
13. Close the bonnet → page 154.
14. **Dipped beam / main beam** A, after installing the new bulb, adjust the beam.

The illustrations show the left-hand headlight from the rear. The right-hand headlight is a mirror image of the one shown. ◁

Changing bulbs in the front bumper - fog light

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 141.

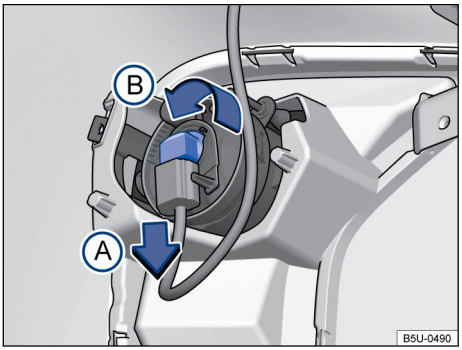


Fig. 137 Behind the front bumper: access to the fog light bulb.

To access and change the fog light bulb the vehicle must be lifted → ⚠. Also see → page 207.

Volkswagen recommends changing fog light bulbs at a Volkswagen Dealership in case of doubt. ▶

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

1. Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 141.
2. Disconnect the bulb connector → Fig. 137 in the direction of the arrow Ⓐ and press the connector securing lock simultaneously.
3. Turn the bulb socket → Fig. 137, in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ, and remove it
4. The fog light bulb is secured in the holder; the entire bulb/holder assembly must be replaced
5. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
6. Insert the new bulb/socket set into the housing.
7. Press the socket down as far as possible and turn clockwise.
8. Ensure that the socket is properly secured.
9. Fit the bulb connector.

⚠ WARNING

Never lift the vehicle using the vehicle jack to change fog light bulbs.

The illustration shows the left-hand side fog light. The right-hand fog light is a mirror image of the one shown. ◁

Changing bulbs in the rear bodywork lights

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 141.

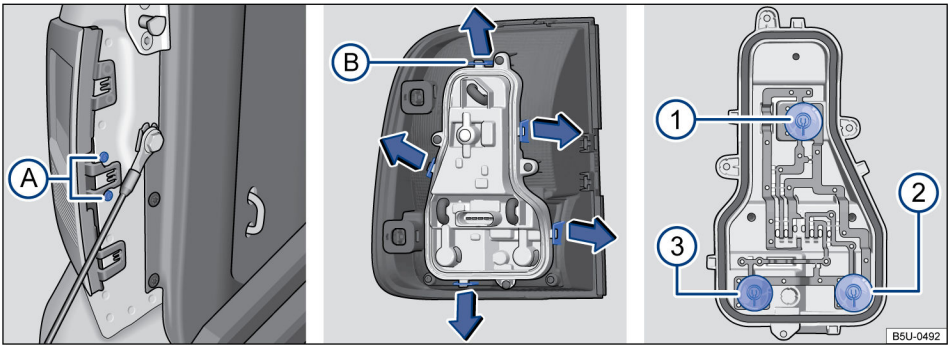


Fig. 138 Tail light: Ⓒ remove the bulb support and ①, ②, ③, ④ e ⑤ remove the bulbs.

Access to the rear lamp to change bulbs is made through the luggage compartment. The rear fog light is located only on the left side.

Volkswagen recommends changing bulbs at a Volkswagen Dealership in case of doubt.

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order.

Removing the tail light

1. Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 141.
2. Open the tailgate → page 52.
3. Carefully remove the cover Ⓐ by pulling it out.
4. Remove the two fastening bolts Ⓑ.
5. Carefully pull the tail light out to remove it from the bodywork → ⓘ.
6. Disconnect the light bulb connector to completely remove the bulb.
7. Place the rear light in a smooth and even surface.
8. To unlock the bulb support, press each locking pin Ⓒ in the direction of the arrow.
9. Carefully remove the bulb holder. ▶

Changing bulbs

1. To remove the defective bulbs (1), (2) and (3), press the bulb against the support and turn it anticlockwise.
2. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
3. To insert new bulbs (1), (2) and (3), insert the new bulb into the respective socket. Press the bulb and turn clockwise until reaching the stop.
4. Ensure that the bulbs are properly secured in the bulb holder.
5. Insert the rear light bulb support. The locking pawls (C) must audibly fit into place.

Installing the tail light

1. Fit the bulb connector.
2. Carefully fit the rear light in the bodywork housing.
3. Reinsert the two fastening bolts (B) and tighten them.
4. Reinsert the dropside (A). The cover must be properly secured.
5. Close the tailgate → page 52.

Changing bulbs in the number plate light

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 141.

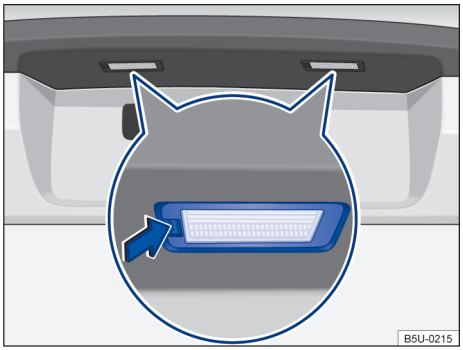


Fig. 139 On the rear bumper: remove the number plate light.

The location and identification of bulbs → Fig. 138 are provided below:

1. Side light bulb.
2. Side light and brake light bulb.
3. Reverse gear light bulb.
4. Fog light bulb - only on the left side, when available in the vehicle.
5. Turn signal light bulb.

The rear fog light is located only on the left side, beneath other lamps.

NOTICE

- Always take care when removing or fitting rear lights into the bodywork, in order to prevent damage to the paintwork or to other vehicle parts.
- Volkswagen recommends special attention to some plastic parts with clamps, which might break when removing or fitting bulbs. ◁

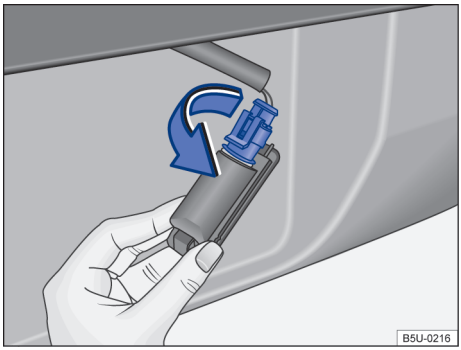


Fig. 140 Number plate light: remove the bulb socket.

A screwdriver may be used to remove the number plate light → ⓘ. ▶

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

1. Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 141.
2. Using a screwdriver, press the lock → Fig. 139 to remove the assembly.
3. Turn the bulb socket in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 140 and remove it from the housing.
4. Pull the defective bulb from the socket to remove it.
5. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
6. Carefully insert the new bulb into the socket.
7. Press down the socket and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow → Fig. 140.
8. Ensure that the socket is properly secured.
9. Insert the bulb set into the bumper housing, initially fitting the right side and then the left side.
10. Press the number plate light in the bumper until it is audibly secured in place.
11. Ensure that the number plate light set is properly secured.

NOTICE

Always take care when removing or fitting the number plate bulb in the rear bumper, in order to prevent damage to the paintwork or to other vehicle parts. ◁

Changing bulbs in the luggage compartment

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 141.

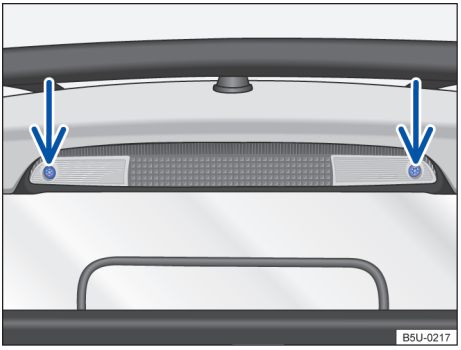


Fig. 141 On the bed: remove the elevated brake light.

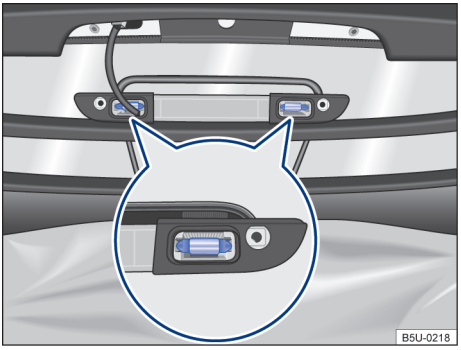


Fig. 142 Elevated brake light: remove the bulb from the bed light.

The luggage compartment bulb is located next to the high-mounted brake light, above the rear window, outside the vehicle.

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

1. Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 141.
2. Remove the fastening bolts → Fig. 141.
3. Carefully pull the high-mounted brake light outwards in order to remove it.
4. Using a screwdriver, press one of the sides of the light → Fig. 142 to remove it from the set. ▶

5. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
6. Carefully insert the new bulb into the socket.
7. Carefully fit the high-mounted brake light in its housing.
8. Reinsert and tighten the fastening bolts → Fig. 141.
9. Ensure that the high-mounted brake light is properly secured in its housing.

NOTICE

Volkswagen recommends changing luggage compartment light bulbs at a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop in order to prevent vehicle damages. ◁

Fuses

Introduction

Several electrical consumers could share a single fuse. Conversely, a single consumer could have more than one fuse.

Therefore, fuses should only be replaced when the cause of a fault has been rectified. If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

WARNING

High voltages in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, severe burns and death!

- Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
- Avoid causing short-circuits in the electrical system.

WARNING

Using unsuitable or repaired fuses and bridging an electrical circuit without fuses can cause fires and severe injuries.

- Never fit fuses that have a higher fuse protection limit. Fuses must always be replaced with a new fuse which has the same amp rating (same colour and imprint) and size.
- Never repair a fuse.
- Never use a metal strip, paper clip or similar items to replace a fuse.

NOTICE

- In order to avoid damage to the electrical system in the vehicle, the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers must be switched off and the vehicle key removed from the ignition cylinder before changing a fuse.
- You can damage another position in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating.
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.

A single consumer may have more than one fuse.

Several consumers may share a single fuse. ◁

Fuses in the dash panel

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 147.

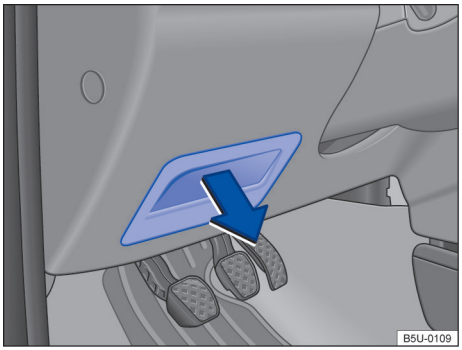


Fig. 143 On the driver's side of the dashboard: fuse box cover.

Fuses must always be replaced with a new fuse which has the same amp rating (same colour and imprint) and size.

Opening and closing the dashboard fuse box

Remove the stowage compartment / fuse box cover → Fig. 143 in the direction of the arrow. ▶

NOTICE

- Remove the covers for the fuse boxes carefully and install them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.

This chapter does not refer to all the fuses located in the vehicle. These must be changed only by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. ◁

Fuse box in the dashboard

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 147.

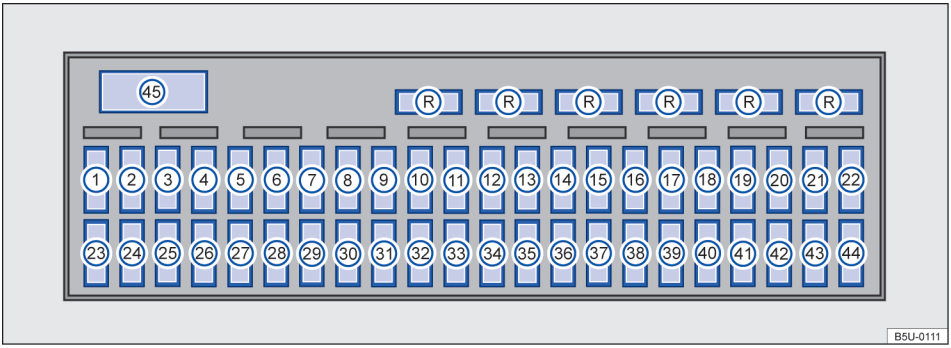


Fig. 144 Fuse box.

Volkswagen recommends keeping spare fuses in the vehicles, which may be stored in the upper part of the fuse box → Fig. 144 Ⓡ (such as 5 A, 10 A, 15 A, 20 A, 25 A and 30 A fuses for vehicles without air conditioning or 40 A for vehicles with air conditioning system).

Some fuses may be specific to certain versions.

Locations with respective functions for equipment that may be available in your vehicle are provided below:

1 Free
2 Convenience system module / Radio (vehicles equipped for radios)
3 Light switch / Fog light
4 Free
5 Airbag module
6 Rear window heating
7 Ignition transformer
8 12-volt socket in the luggage compartment
9 ABS /ESC module
10 Radio / USB charger / Rear view camera system
11 Headlight range control switch
12 Interior lighting
13 Free
14 Exterior electric mirror
15 Electromagnetic air conditioning gearing
16 Alarm / Rain and twilight sensors
17 Central locking
18 Rear seat 12 V socket
19 Turn signals / Multifunction steering wheel
20 Diagnostic socket / load compartment lighting
21 Turn signals / Brake lights
22 Comfort system module / USB charger
23 Arrow key
24 Instrument cluster / Electric control unit relay / Fuel pump relay
25 Windscreen washer pump / Windscreen wipers
26 Injection module ▶

27 Free
28 Free
29 Fuel pump
30 Warm starting (E-FLEX)
31 Right and left main beam / Main beam indicator lamp in the instrument cluster
32 Left-hand side dipped beam headlights
33 Reverse gear light
34 Instrument cluster / Cold starting system relay / Fuel pump relay / Parking distance control relay / Air conditioning relay / Engine control module / Electric interior mirror / Rain and twilight sensors
35 Electric window control module / Right-hand mirror tilt down module
36 Light switch
37 Horn
38 Interior ventilation
39 Free
40 Fuel injection valves / Clutch pedal sensor / Brake pedal sensor
41 Lambda probe / Activated charcoal filter cleaning valve
42 Windscreen wipers
43 Right-hand side dipped beam headlights
44 12-volt socket on the centre console
45 Electric control unit ◁

Fuses in the engine compartment

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 147.

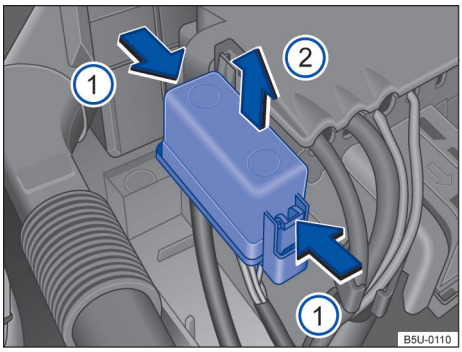


Fig. 145 On the engine compartment: fuse box cover.

Opening the fuse box in the engine compartment

– Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 154.
– Press the retainers in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 145 ① to release the fuse box cover.
– Lift off the cover in the direction of the arrow ②.
– To **fit**, place the cover over the fuse box. Press the cover down, in the opposite direction to the arrow ②, until it clicks into place.

NOTICE

- Remove the covers for the fuse boxes carefully and install them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system. ◁

Fuse box in the engine compartment

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 147.

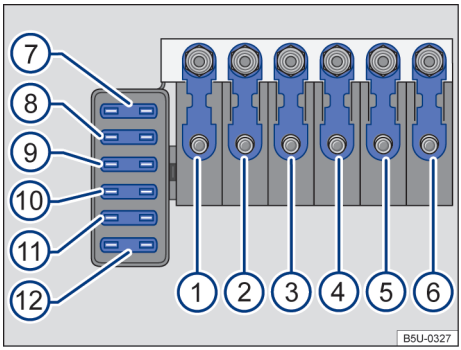


Fig. 146 Fuse box.

Fuses are located in the engine compartment, above the vehicle battery → ⚠. ▶

Fuses in the engine compartment must only be replaced by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

Locations with respective functions and amp rating for equipment that may be available in your vehicle are provided below:

1	Alternator	**175**
2	Internal compartment supply	**110**
3	Radiator fan - 2nd speed	**40**
4	Free	**-**
5	ABS / ESC	**40**
6	Warm starting (E-FLEX)	**110**
7	ABS / ESC	**25**
8	Radiator fan - 1nd speed	**40**
9	Convenience system	**5**
10	Free	**-**
11	Free	**-**
12	Free	**-**

WARNING

Before initiating any work in the engine compartment, always read and observe the warning notes → page 154, *Safety guidelines for work in the engine compartment*. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area and may cause severe injuries. ◁

Changing a blown fuse

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 147.

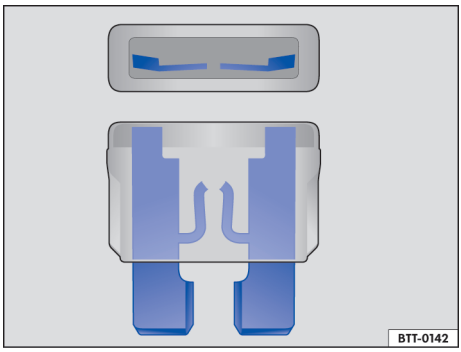


Fig. 147 Blown fuse.

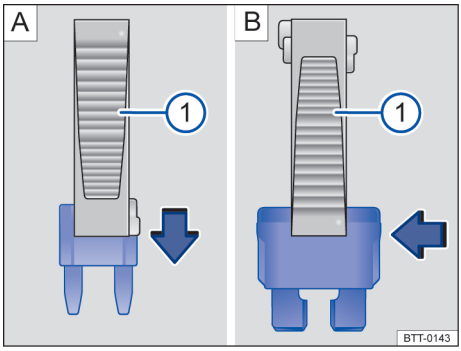


Fig. 148 Removing or fitting a fuse using the plastic pliers ①.

Colour code of fuses under the dashboard

Colour *Amp rating*

Lilac 3 A
Light brown 5 A
Brown 7.5 A
Red 10 A
Blue 15 A
Yellow 20 A
White or clear 25 A
Green 30 A
Orange 40 A ▶

Preparations

– Switch off the ignition, the lights, and all electrical consumers.

– Open the respective fuse box → page 147.

Detecting a blown fuse

A melted metal strip indicates that the fuse has blown → Fig. 147.

Shine a flashlight onto the fuse. This will help you to spot the blown fuse more easily.

Changing a fuse

– If applicable, take the plastic tweezers → Fig. 148 ① out of the fuse box cover.

– For *small fuses*, push on the catch ① from above → Fig. 148 **A**.

– For *bigger fuses*, push the catch ① onto the fuse from the side → Fig. 148 **B**.

– Pull out the blown fuse.

– If the fuse has blown, replace it with a new fuse of the *same* amp rating (same colour and same imprint) and *same* size → ⓘ.

– Reinsert the cover.

NOTICE

You can damage another position in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating. ◁

Jump starting

Introduction

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged vehicle battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine. Before using jump starting, check the window on the vehicle battery → page 166.

The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

The jump leads must have sufficient length to ensure proper distance between the vehicles.

WARNING

Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of the battery exploding:

- All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the vehicle battery → page 166, *Vehicle battery*.
- The assistance providing vehicle's battery must be of the same voltage as the discharged vehicle battery (12-volt) and be approximately of the same capacity (see imprint on battery).
- Never charge a frozen or defrosted vehicle battery. A discharged vehicle battery can even freeze at temperatures of around 0° C (+32° F).
- The battery should be replaced if it has frozen or defrosted.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when jump starting the vehicle battery. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.
- Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.
- Position the jump leads so that they never come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.
- Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.
- Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.

NOTICE

Please note the following in order to avoid considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system:

- short circuit can be caused if the jump leads are connected incorrectly. ▶

- The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. ◁

How to start the engine using jump leads

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 151.

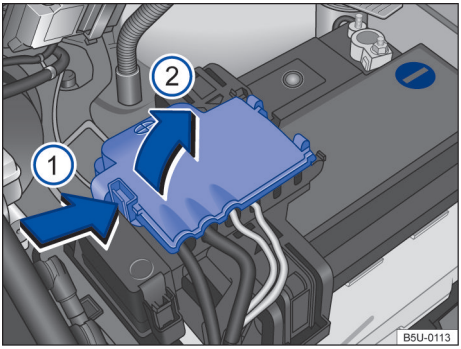


Fig. 149 Engine compartment: access to the positive battery terminal.

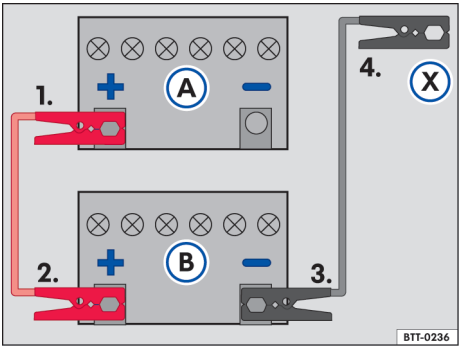


Fig. 150 Jump lead attachment diagram: discharged vehicle battery Ⓐ and battery in the vehicle providing assistance Ⓑ.

Key for→ Fig. 150:

Ⓐ Vehicle with discharged vehicle battery which is getting jump starting assistance.

Ⓑ Vehicle with the current supplying battery assisting jump starting.

Ⓧ Proper grounding point: a piece of solid metal firmly bolted to the cylinder block.

The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

The vehicles must not touch each other. Otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

Make sure the battery clamps have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about one minute.

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order.

Attaching the jump leads

– Switch off the ignition in both vehicles →page 86.

– Open the positive terminal cover. To open, press the lock in the direction of the arrow →Fig. 149 ① and move the cover to the side, in the direction of the arrow ②.

– Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal →Fig. 150 ⊕ of the vehicle with the discharged battery Ⓐ →⚠.

– Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal ⊕ of the battery in the vehicle providing assistance Ⓑ.

– Connect one end of the *black* jump lead to the negative terminal ⊖ of the battery in the vehicle providing assistance Ⓑ.

– Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead Ⓧ to the vehicle with the discharged battery. Connect it to the screwed-in towing eye at the front, a solid metal component which is bolted on to the engine block, or to the engine block itself. However, do not connect it to a point near the vehicle battery Ⓐ →⚠.

– Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

– Start the engine of the vehicle which is providing assistance and let it run at idle.

– Start the engine of the car with the discharged vehicle battery and wait two to three minutes until the engine is “running smoothly”. ▶

Removing the jump leads

– Before disconnecting the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlights if they are switched on.
– Turn on the heating and fresh air system blowers and rear window heater (not available in some versions) in the vehicle battery with the discharged battery. This helps to minimise voltage peaks which are generated when the leads are disconnected.
– With the engines running, disconnect the jump leads in the exact reverse order to the instructions given above.
– Close the positive battery terminal cover.

⚠ WARNING

Jump starting the vehicle incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to serious injuries. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of the battery exploding:

- All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the vehicle battery → page 166, *Vehicle battery*.
- Make sure there is no one inside the vehicle when connecting battery jump leads. In case of electrical failure, airbags may be accidentally engaged and cause severe or even fatal injuries to vehicle occupants.
- Always wear suitable eye protection and never lean over the vehicle battery.
- Attach the connector cables in the correct order – the positive cable first, followed by the negative.
- Never connect the negative cable to parts of the fuel system or to the brake hose/pipe.
- Non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. Additionally, the jump lead attached to the positive vehicle battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle.
- Check the window on the vehicle battery using a flashlight if necessary If the display is light yellow or colourless, do not jump start the vehicle. Seek expert assistance.
- Avoid electrostatic discharge in the vicinity of the vehicle battery. The gas emitted from the vehicle battery could be ignited by sparks.
- Never use jump starting to start the engine if the vehicle battery is damaged, frozen or has defrosted.

NOTICE

Incorrectly attached jump leads could result in substantial damages to the vehicle's electrical system. ◁

Tow starting and towing

Introduction

For technical reasons, vehicles must not be tow started. Use jump leads to start the engine instead → page 151.

For technical reasons, vehicles with a discharged battery must not be tow started. Jump start the engine instead → page 151. ◁

Towing

Whenever it is necessary to tow your vehicle, use a specialized towing service, using tow trucks or platforms.

When using tow trucks, the vehicle must be securely fastened by the front wheels. Ensure that no gears are selected and the handbrake lever is not applied.

NOTICE

Always comply with applicable traffic laws regarding towing. ◁

Checking and refuelling

In the engine compartment

Safety guidelines for work in the engine compartment

Always park the vehicle on a levelled and stable surface before carrying out any work in the engine compartment.

The engine compartment of a motor vehicle is a hazardous area. Never carry out any work on the engine or in the engine compartment if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety requirements, as well as without the unsuitable tools, fluids and resources available → ⚠. If necessary, such work must be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. Serious injuries can be caused if work is carried out incorrectly.

⚠ WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements during service work can cause serious injury.

- Never work underneath a vehicle if it is not secured against rolling away. If you are working underneath the vehicle while the wheels are on the ground, the vehicle must be on a level, the wheels must be blocked and the vehicle key must be removed from the ignition cylinder.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support. The vehicle jack is not sufficient for this task and can fail, which can lead to serious injuries.

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area and may cause severe injuries!

- The utmost care and attention must be paid when carrying out any work and you must follow the general safety rules. Never take any risks.
- Never do any work on the engine or in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry it out. If you are uncertain of what to do, the work should be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. Serious injuries can result from work that has not been carried out properly.
- Never open the cover if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Hot steam or coolant can cause severe burns. Always wait until you can no longer notice steam or coolant coming from the engine compartment.
- Always let the engine cool down before opening the engine compartment cover.
- Hot parts of the engine or exhaust system may burn the skin.
- Before opening the engine compartment cover once it has cooled down:
  - Pull the handbrake and place the gear selector lever into neutral position.
  - Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
  - Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave the vehicle unattended.
- The engine cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Coolant may spray out and cause severe burns and injuries.
  - After cooling, turn the cap slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while exerting some downwards pressure on the cap.
  - Always protect the face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- When refilling, do not spill any service fluids on engine components or on the exhaust system. Spilt service fluids may start fires.

⚠ WARNING

The high voltage in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, burns, serious injuries and death!

- Never short circuit the electric system. The vehicle battery could explode.
- Please note the following guidelines to help reduce the risk of an electric shock and serious injuries while the engine is running or being started:
  - Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
  - Never touch electrical wiring. ▶

WARNING

There are rotating components in the engine compartment that can cause serious injury.

- Never touch the radiator area or fan directly. Touching the rotary blades may result in severe injuries. The fan is temperature-controlled and can start automatically, even if the engine has been switched off and the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition cylinder.
- If any work has to be performed when the engine is started or with the engine running, there is an additional, potentially fatal, safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the Poly-V or drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always be extremely cautious.
  - Always ensure that no body parts, jewellery, ties, loose items of clothing or long hair can be caught up in rotating engine components. Before starting work, remove any jewellery and ties, tie up long hair and pull clothes in tightly to avoid them getting caught in the engine compartment.
  - Always depress the accelerator carefully and never thoughtlessly. The vehicle can move even while the handbrake is applied.
- Always make sure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the engine compartment. Any forgotten items can cause malfunctions, engine damage and fires.

WARNING

Operating fluids and some materials in the engine compartment are highly flammable and may cause fires and severe injuries!

- Never smoke around the engine compartment.
- Never work near naked flames or sparks.
- Never spill fluids onto the engine. They could ignite on hot engine components and cause injuries.
- Please note the following when carrying out any work on the fuel system or the electrical system:
  - Always disconnect the vehicle battery. Ensure that the vehicle is unlocked before the battery is disconnected. Otherwise, the alarm system will be activated.
  - Never work in the direct proximity of heating systems, water heaters or any other open flames.

NOTICE

When refilling or changing operating fluids please ensure that the fluids are in the correct container. Incorrect operating fluids can cause serious functional problems and engine damages!

Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. Regularly check the ground underneath your vehicle. If there are spots of oil or other fluids on the ground, the vehicle must be inspected by a Volkswagen Dealership. ◁

Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment

Checklist

The following steps should always be carried out in the specified order before working in the engine compartment→ ⚠:

✓ Park the vehicle on a levelled and stable surface.

✓ Depress and hold the brake pedal until the engine has stopped.

✓ Apply the handbrake → page 95.

✓ Position the gear selection lever into the neutral position → page 89.

✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition lock → page 86.

✓ Allow the engine to cool down sufficiently.

✓ Children and other people should be kept well away from the engine compartment.

✓ Ensure that the vehicle cannot roll away unexpectedly.

WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Always follow the instructions on the checklist and comply with applicable safety precautions. ◁

Opening and closing the engine compartment cover

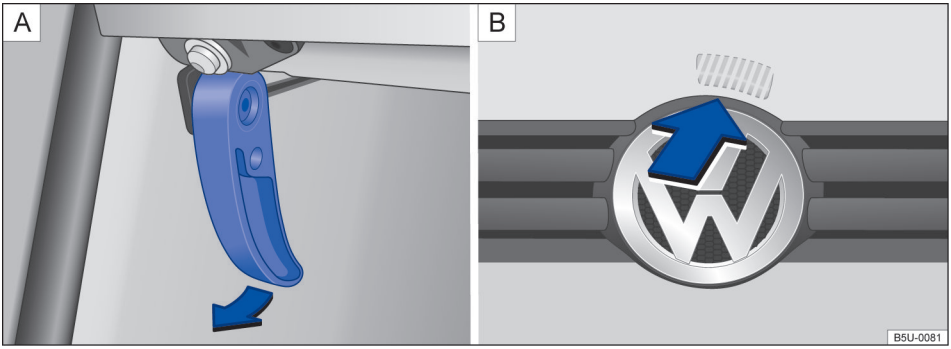


Fig. 151 A Bonnet release lever on the driver side footwell. B Bonnet release lever on the inner side of the bonnet.

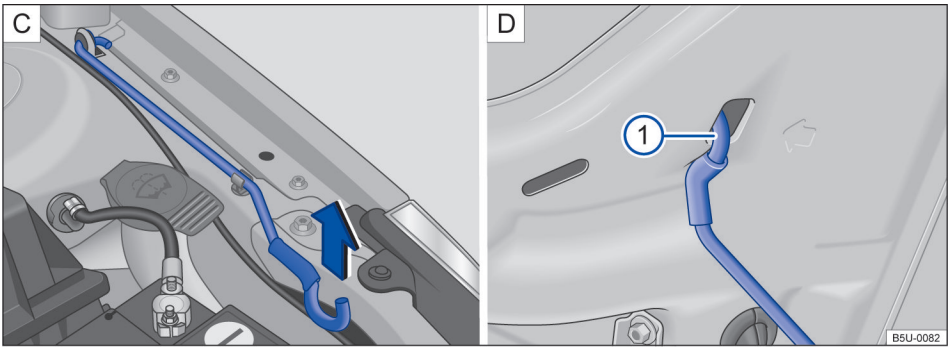


Fig. 152 C Bonnet stay. D Bonnet secured with the bonnet stay.

Opening the engine compartment cover

– Ensure that the windscreen wiper arms are positioned on the windscreen before opening the bonnet → ⓘ.
– Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 151 A. The bonnet is released from its lock by a spring mechanism → ⚠.
– Slightly lift the bonnet and press the release lever → Fig. 151 B located on the inner side of the bonnet simultaneously, in the direction of the arrow, to open the bonnet.
– Take the bonnet stay out of the holder in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 152 C and insert it in the bonnet opening → Fig. 152 1 D.

Closing the engine compartment cover

– Lift the bonnet slightly → ⚠.
– Take the bonnet stay out of the holder → Fig. 152 1 D and insert it in the opening in the bonnet → Fig. 152 C.
– Release the bonnet at approximately 20 cm from the lock – *do not* press down!

If the bonnet is not closed, open it again and close it properly.

The engine compartment cover sits flush with the body parts around it when it is closed properly.

⚠ WARNING

When the open bonnet supported by the bonnet stay, do not push or apply additional force to close the bonnet, since this could cause bonnet damages and severe injuries.

WARNING

If the engine compartment cover is not closed properly, it can open suddenly while you are driving and completely obscure your view of the road. This could lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- After closing the engine compartment cover, always check that it is properly secured. The engine compartment cover must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- If you notice that the bonnet is not closed properly while the vehicle is in motion, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and close the bonnet.
- Open or close the engine compartment cover only when you are sure that nobody is in its path.

NOTICE

The bonnet should only be opened when the wiper arms are flush to the windscreen in order to avoid damage to the bonnet and the windscreen wiper arms. ◁

Service fluids and consumables

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. toothed belts, tyres, coolant, engine oil, spark plugs and vehicle batteries, are being constantly perfectioned. For this reason, service fluids and consumables should be replaced at a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. Volkswagen Dealerships are always updated about innovations.

WARNING

Unsuitable service fluids and consumables, and the incorrect use of these fluids and consumables, can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns or poisoning.

- Service fluids must be kept in their original sealed container.
- Never store service fluids in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers could drink them.
- Keep children away from all service fluids and consumables.
- Always read and follow the information and warnings on the service fluid packaging.
- When using products that give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well ventilated area.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids to wash, clean or care for your vehicle. These substances are poisonous and highly flammable. They could cause fires and explosions!

NOTICE

- Only use suitable service fluids for refilling. Never use the service fluids not recommended. Failure to observe this warning can result in serious faults and engine damages!
- Optional equipment and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. The engine may overheat at high ambient temperatures and high engine loads!

Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. Regularly check the ground underneath your vehicle. If there are spots of oil or other fluids on the ground, the vehicle must be inspected by a Volkswagen Dealership. ◁

Washer fluid

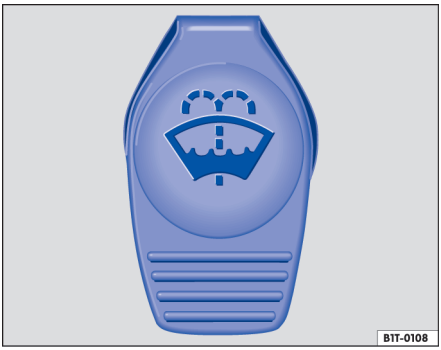


Fig. 153 On the engine compartment: windscreen washer fluid reservoir cap.

The windscreen washer fluid level should be checked regularly and topped up as necessary.

– Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 154.
– The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is identified by the symbol on its cap → Fig. 153.
– Check whether there is enough windscreen washer fluid in the reservoir.
– To top up, mix clean water with a washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen → ⓘ. Observe the dilution instructions on the packaging.
– At low temperatures, add a special antifreeze agent so that the fluid cannot freeze → ⚠.

Check the window washer reservoir capacity in → page 220

⚠ WARNING

Never mix antifreeze or other unsuitable additives into the windscreen washer fluid. An oily film may otherwise be left on the screen, compromising visibility.

- Use clean water with a washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen.
- Suitable antifreeze agents may be added to the windscreen washer fluid, if necessary.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- Never mix other cleaning agents with the cleaning agents recommended by Volkswagen. This may cause the components to coagulate and, as a result, clog the windscreen wiper nozzles.
- Never mix up service fluids when refilling! Failure to observe this warning can result in serious faults and engine damages! ◁

Engine oil

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect handling of engine oil can cause severe burns and injuries.

- Always wear eye protection when handling engine oil.
- Engine oil is toxic and must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Engine oil must be kept in the closed original container. This also applies to used oil before proper disposal.
- Never use empty food containers, bottles or other containers to store engine oil, since other people may then drink the engine oil.
- Regular contact with engine oil can damage the skin. Skin that has been in contact with engine oil should be washed thoroughly with water and soap.
- Engine oil becomes extremely hot when the engine is running and may scald skin severely. Always allow the engine to cool down.

Leaking or spilt engine oil can pollute the environment. In order to prevent such event, replace the engine oil preferably at a Volkswagen Dealership, which is equipped with special tools and qualification to properly dispose of used engine oil.

- If engine oil or other fluid stains are found on the floor, underneath the vehicle, Volkswagen recommends inspecting the vehicle, preferably at a Volkswagen Dealership. ◁

Engine oil specification

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

VW 508 88 is the standard engine oil in your Volkswagen. This standard must be described on the oil packaging. Engine oils approved by Volkswagen are available at Volkswagen Dealerships.

When refuelling, engine oils approved by Volkswagen according to the **VW 508 88** standard can be mixed with each other.

If, in an emergency, no approved **VW 508 88** standard engine oil is available, you may temporarily use an engine oil that meets the following requirements: ACEA A3/B4 specification with the following viscosity grades: **SAE 0W 30**, **SAE 0W 40**, **SAE 5W 30**, **SAE 5W 40**, **SAE 10W 30** or **SAE 10W 40**. However, we recommend seeking a Volkswagen Dealership as soon as possible for the oil change with factory approved engine oil.

Engine oil specifications are available in the product package.

Engine oils are constantly being developed and improved. Volkswagen Dealerships are always updated about innovations. That is why Volkswagen recommends having engine oil changes performed at a Volkswagen Dealership.

NOTICE

- Use only expressly Volkswagen approved engine oil specifications. Using other engine oils may cause damages to the engine!
- Do not mix additional lubricating additives to the engine oil. Damages caused by such additives are not covered by the warranty.
- Damages to the engine caused by using oil that does not meet the VW 508 88 standard are excluded from the warranty. ◁

Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

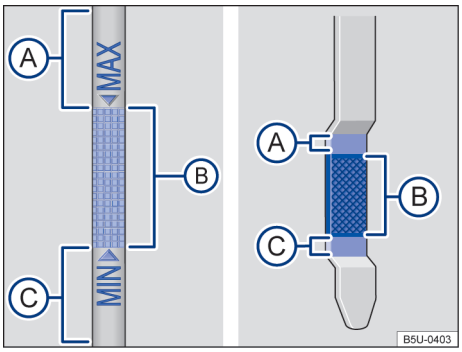


Fig. 154 Oil dipstick with markings.

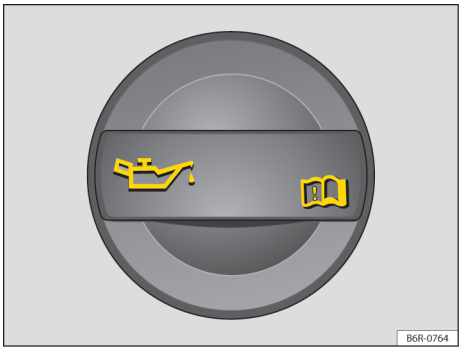


Fig. 155 On the engine compartment: engine oil opening lid.

Checklist

Carry out the steps in the specified order→ ⚠:

1. With the engine at **operating temperature**, park the vehicle on a level surface to ensure that the engine oil reading is correct.
2. Switch off the engine and wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the sump.
3. Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 154.
4. Identify the engine oil filler cap and oil dipstick. The engine oil filler opening bears the symbol on the cap → Fig. 155 and the oil dipstick has a coloured handle. If you cannot ▶

find the cap and dipstick please contact a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

5. Pull the dipstick out of the guide tube and wipe it off with a clean cloth → ⓘ.
6. Insert the oil dipstick into the guide tube again as far as it will go. If the oil dipstick has a marking, it must be adjusted to the corresponding groove on the upper edge of the guide tube upon insertion.
7. Pull the dipstick out again and read the engine oil level on the dipstick → Fig. 154 as follows:

   Ⓐ: **do not** refill oil → ⓘ. Proceed to step 15.

   Ⓑ: proper oil level. Refill with oil (approximately 0.5 l). Proceed to step 8 or 15.

   Ⓒ: recommended oil **must** be refilled until level reaches region Ⓑ. Proceed to step 8.
8. After reading the oil level, push the oil dipstick back into the guide tube as far as it will go.
9. Unscrew the engine oil filler opening cap → Fig. 155.
10. Only refill with engine oils approved by Volkswagen gradually, in small quantities (up to 0.5 l).
11. To avoid overfilling, wait for approximately one minute after each pour to allow the engine oil to flow into the oil sump up to the marking on the engine oil dipstick.
12. Read the engine oil level from the dipstick again before refilling with a further small quantity of engine oil. Never overfill engine oil → ⓘ.
13. After the refilling procedure, the engine oil level must be at least in the centre of area → Fig. 154 Ⓑ, but never above area Ⓐ → ⓘ.
14. After refilling, screw the engine oil filler cap back on correctly.
15. Correctly insert the oil dipstick into the guide tube again as far as it will go.
16. Close the bonnet correctly ⚠ → page 154.

Check the engine oil level in → page 220.

⚠ WARNING

Engine oil can ignite if it comes into contact with hot engine components. This may cause fires, serious burns and injuries.

- If engine oil is spilt on cold engine parts it can heat up and ignite when the engine is running.
- Always ensure that the engine oil filler cap is securely tightened after refilling, and that the dipstick is properly inserted back into the guide tube. This will prevent the engine oil from draining out on to hot engine components when the engine is running.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not start the engine when the engine oil level is above the range → Fig. 154 Ⓐ. Seek professional assistance immediately. The catalytic converter and the engine could otherwise be damaged!
- When refilling or changing operating fluids please ensure that the fluids are in the correct container. Incorrect operating fluids can cause serious functional problems and engine damages.

ⓘ NOTICE

Use only cloths that don't shred to clean the oil dipstick, since such shredding could damage the engine.

The engine oil level must never exceed the → Fig. 154 Ⓐ region, otherwise, the oil may be aspirated by the crankcase ventilation and discharged into the atmosphere by the exhaust system. Additionally, oil may be combusted inside the catalytic converter, damaging it.

Leaking or spilt engine oil can pollute the environment. In order to prevent such event, Volkswagen recommends replacing the engine oil preferably at a Volkswagen Dealership, which is equipped with special tools and qualification to properly dispose of used engine oil. ◁

Engine oil consumption

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

Engine oil consumption may vary from engine to engine. Due to the design of internal combustion engines, in order to adequately lubricate components, part of the engine oil is consumed during normal engine operation. Therefore, engine oil consumption may vary throughout the engine's ▶

service life. In addition, depending on driving behaviors and vehicle use conditions, oil consumption may reach up to 0.5 l in 1,000 km. Engine oil level must therefore be checked at regular intervals – preferably when refuelling and before long journeys.

When the engine is working hard, the oil level must be kept within the → Fig. 154 Ⓐ area – for instance during long motorway cruising in summer or climbing mountain passes. ◁

Changing the engine oil

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

The engine oil must be regularly renewed. Observe which service interval applies to the vehicle → page 192. Ensure that such frequency is followed, especially when the vehicle is used in extreme conditions, which requires greater frequency of such services.

The engine oil and filter must be changed by qualified workshops due to the fact that such procedure requires special tools and expertise. This also ensures proper disposal of used oil. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

More information on service intervals can be found at → page 192.

⚠ WARNING

If, in exceptional cases, you have to carry out an oil change yourself, please note the following:

- Always wear eye protection.
- Always allow the engine to cool down completely to avoid burns.
- Keep your arms horizontal when removing the oil drain plug with your fingers to help prevent oil from running down your arm.
- Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It must be at least large enough to hold the entire quantity of engine oil required for refilling.
- Never store engine oil in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain engine oil.
- Engine oil is toxic and must be stored out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

Do not mix additional lubricating additives to the engine oil. Damages caused by such additives are not covered by the warranty.

Volkswagen recommends replacing the oil and filter preferably at an authorised Volkswagen repairer, which is equipped with special tools and qualification to properly dispose of used engine oil.

- Never dispose of old oil in locations such as gardens, woods, sewerage systems, on streets and roads, or in rivers and waterways.
- In order to completely drain used oil, use an appropriate and sufficient recipient to collect all of the engine oil; refer to → page 220. ◁

Troubleshooting

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

Warning lamps and text messages may light up and be displayed on the instrument cluster display. In addition, acoustic signals may be sounded.

Engine oil

Central warning lamp

and **On:** engine oil pressure too low. **Stop driving!** Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil and refill if necessary → page 159. If the warning light remains lit and the oil level is suitable, *do not* drive on or keep the engine running. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek out assistance from an authorised Volkswagen repairer immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lamps or text messages. ▶

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.

The oil pressure warning lamp is not indicative of the engine oil level. The engine oil level must be controlled in regular intervals, preferably whenever the tank is filled. ◁

Engine coolant

Introduction

Never carry out any work on the engine coolant system if you are not familiar with the requisite procedures, or if you do not have access to the correct tools, operating equipment and fluids→ ⚠! In this case, all activities must be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

Serious injuries can be caused if work is carried out incorrectly.

⚠ WARNING

Engine coolant is toxic!

- Engine coolant must only be kept in sealed original containers in a safe place.
- Never store engine coolant in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may then drink the engine coolant.
- The engine coolant must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Please note that the amount of correct coolant additive used must be sufficient for the lowest ambient temperature that you expect the vehicle to be exposed to.
- Coolant can freeze at extremely cold outside temperatures, causing the vehicle to break down. In this case, the internal vehicle heating will also no longer function, which may lower the body temperature of vehicle occupants with inadequate winter clothing.
- Prolonged exposure to cold and loss of body heat are hazardous factors to human health.

Under no circumstance may old engine coolant be reused. Observe specific disposal regulations for this product.

Volkswagen recommends changing or refilling the engine coolant and its additives at a Volkswagen Dealership, which has proper fluid disposal procedures. Never dispose of used fluids in locations such as gardens, woods, sewerage systems, on streets and roads, or in rivers and waterways. ◁

Engine coolant specifications

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 162.

The engine cooling system is factory supplied with a mixture of **distilled water** and 40% G 12evo (TL-VW 774 L) engine coolant additive.

This mixture provides the necessary antifreeze of up to -25° C (-13° F) and protects the alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion. The mixture also prevents scaling and raises the boiling point of the coolant.

In order to protect the coolant system, the proportion of coolant additive must *always* be at least 40%, even if antifreeze is not required in warm weather and warm climates.

If greater antifreeze is required in very cold climates, the proportion of antifreeze additive can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additive must not exceed 60%, as this would reduce the antifreeze and the cooling effect.

When topping up the coolant, a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40% coolant additive must be used in order to obtain the optimum corrosion protection → ⓘ.

Mixing G 12evo with the engine coolants G 13 (TL-VW 774 J), G 12 plus-plus (TL-VW 774 G), G 12 plus (TL-VW 774 F) or G 12 (red colour) significantly compromises ant-corrosion properties and must be avoided.

Refer to Volkswagen Dealerships for more information on coolants approved by Volkswagen. That is why Volkswagen recommends having engine oil changes done by a Volkswagen dealership. ▶

WARNING

Insufficient antifreeze in the coolant system can cause the engine to break down.

- Ensure that the correct engine coolant additive ratio is used based on the ambient temperature to which the vehicle is exposed.

NOTICE

Never mix genuine coolant additives with other coolants that have not been approved by Volkswagen. Mixing with non-approved coolants could cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.

- Brown liquid in the coolant expansion tank indicates that the engine coolant has been contaminated. he coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case. Failure to observe this warning can result in serious faults and engine damages!

Under no circumstance may old engine coolant be reused. Observe specific disposal regulations for this product.

Volkswagen recommends changing or refilling the engine coolant and its additives at a Volkswagen Dealership, which has proper fluid disposal procedures. Never dispose of used fluids in locations such as gardens, woods, sewerage systems, on streets and roads, or in rivers and waterways. ◁

Checking coolant level and refilling coolant

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 162.

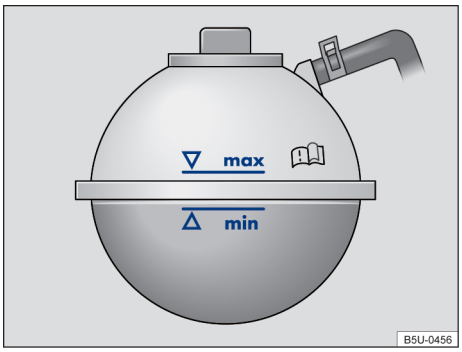


Fig. 156 On the engine compartment: marking on the coolant expansion tank.

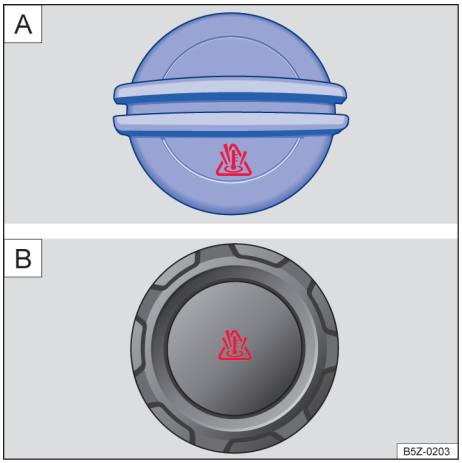


Fig. 157 On the engine compartment: A cap of the engine coolant expansion reservoir (variant 1) or B cap of the engine coolant expansion reservoir (variant 2)

The warning lamp for the engine coolant will light up if the engine coolant level is too low.

Preparations

– Park the vehicle in a flat and steady surface.

– Allow the engine to cool down → ⚠. ▶

– Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 154.
– The coolant expansion tank has the symbol on its cap → Fig. 157.

Checking the engine coolant level

– Check the coolant level at the side marking of the expansion tank when the engine is cold → Fig. 156.
– Refill the engine coolant if the liquid level is below the minimum marking ("min"). When the engine is warm, the coolant level may be slightly above the top end of the marked area.

Refilling engine coolant

– Always protect your hands and arms from hot coolant or steam by placing a suitable cloth on the cap of the coolant expansion tank.
– Carefully unscrew the cap → ⚠ anticlockwise.
– Refill only **new** coolant according to Volkswagen specifications (→ page 162) → ⓘ.
– The coolant level must be between the marks on the expansion tank → Fig. 156. **Do not fill up over the top line of the marked area "max"** → ⓘ!
– Firmly screw-in the cap clockwise.
– If in an emergency you do not have access to the coolant of the required specification, do not use any other coolant additive! Instead, top off with **distilled** → ⓘ only. Then add the correct proportion of coolant additive → page 162 must be re-established as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Hot steam or engine coolant can cause severe burns.

- Never open the bonnet if steam or engine coolant can be seen or heard coming out of the engine compartment. Always wait until no escaping steam or coolant can be seen or heard.
- Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the bonnet. Hot parts may cause burns when touched.
- Before opening the engine compartment cover once it has cooled down:
  – Apply the handbrake and move the selector lever to position N or move the manual gear lever to the neutral position.
  – Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
  – Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave the vehicle unattended.
- The engine cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Coolant may spray out and cause severe burns and injuries.
  – Turn the cap slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while exerting some downwards pressure on the cap.
  – Always protect the face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- When refilling, do not spill any service fluids on engine components or on the exhaust system. Spilt service fluids may start fires. In certain circumstances, the ethylene glycol in the engine can catch fire.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- Do not fill coolant above the top of the marked area "max" → Fig. 156. Otherwise the excess coolant will be pressed out of the cooling system when the engine is hot and could cause damage.
- If a large amount of coolant has been lost, do not refill the coolant until the engine has *completely cooled*. Substantial coolant loss is an indication of leaks in the engine cooling system. The engine cooling system must be checked by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. Failure to do so can result in engine damage!
- When refilling operating fluids, please ensure that the correct container is filled. The use of incorrect operating fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage! ◁

Brake fluid

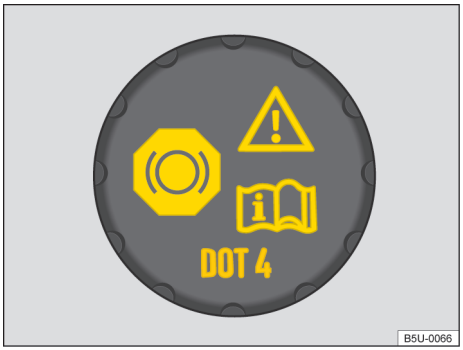


Fig. 158 On the engine compartment: brake fluid reservoir cap.

Brake fluid will gradually absorb water from the surrounding air. The brake system will be damaged if there is too much water in the brake fluid. The boiling point of the brake fluid is also considerably reduced by the water content. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock in the brake system if the water content is too high. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can even cause the brake system to fail completely. Your own safety and that of other road users depends on having a brake system that functions properly at all times → ⚠.

Brake fluid specification

Volkswagen has developed a brake fluid optimised for the brake system in the vehicle. To ensure optimal operation of the brake system, Volkswagen recommends the use of **DOT 4** standard brake fluid → Fig. 158. Additionally, we recommend using original Volkswagen brake fluid.

Before using a particular brake fluid, check that the specifications printed on the container correspond to the vehicle requirements.

Suitable brake fluids may be acquired at a Volkswagen Dealership.

Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level must always be between the MIN and MAX marking on the brake fluid container or above the MIN marking → ⚠.

The brake fluid level cannot be checked accurately in all models, since engine components conceal the brake fluid container. If the brake fluid level cannot be read exactly, please seek expert technical assistance.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

Changing brake fluid

The brake fluid must be changed by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose. Only brake fluid that conforms with the required specification should be refilled.

⚠ WARNING

Brake failure or reduced braking effect can be caused by the brake fluid level being too low or by brake fluid that is too old or unsuitable.

- The brake system and brake fluid level must be checked regularly.
- Renew the brake fluid regularly.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can even cause the brake system to fail completely.
- Please ensure that the correct brake fluid is used. Only use brake fluid compliant with the DOT 4 standard. Any other brake fluid or a low-quality one can affect the functioning of the brakes and reduce their effectiveness. Do not use the brake fluid if the DOT 4 standard is not indicated in the fluid package.
- The refilled brake fluid must be new.

⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is toxic.

- In order to reduce the risk of poisoning, never use bottles or other containers to store brake fluid. These containers could encourage other people to drink out of them, even if they are labelled otherwise.
- Brake fluid must always be stored in its original sealed container and kept out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

Spilt or leaked brake fluid may damage the vehicle paintwork, plastic parts, and tyres. Immediately clean spilt or leaked brake fluid over the vehicle's paintwork or other vehicle parts.

- Never mix different types of brake fluids.
- Clean the cover before removing it and placing it back in the reservoir.

Brake fluid can pollute the environment. Collect and dispose of used fluids properly.

Replacing brake fluids requires special procedures, equipment and knowledge, in addition to specific environmental standards. Therefore, disposing the brake fluid and its respective package as common trash is prohibited. Applicable laws establish specific disposal procedures for these cases. For your safety and convenience, Volkswagen recommends replacing the brake fluid at Volkswagen Dealerships. ◁

Warm starting system (E-FLEX)

Information on the warm starting system

The warm starting system will switch on automatically whenever the coolant temperature is too low and the fuel tank has a high percentage of ethanol.

The indicator lamp will be lit in the instrument cluster upon switching on the ignition. Wait until the indicator lamp on the instrument cluster is switched off before starting the engine.

If the engine starting attempt occurs before the indicator lamp is switched off on the instrument cluster, the lamp will flash, indicating the need to interrupt the starting process → page 87.

In case of warm starting system temperatures below 0º C, under severe engine operating conditions (e.g. weak vehicle battery, low fuel quality, unperformed engine service, exhaust system emissions indicator lamp (OBD) lit → page 133, etc), more than one starting attempt may be required.

In order to prevent starting issues with cold engine, after refilling the vehicle's fuel (replacing the current fuel in the vehicle), the vehicle must run approximately 5 kilometres in order to recognize the new fuel or mixture → page 130.

In case of failure in any warm starting system component, the indicator lamp will light up and remain lit after the engine is started. In this case, there may be difficulties in starting the cold engine, and we recommend submitting the system to due inspection by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

NOTICE

- If the TOTALFLEX vehicle is immobilized by **"lack of fuel"**, the vehicle must be refilled with the last type of fuel used - petrol or ethanol.
- If it is necessary to fill the tank with a different type of fuel, the following may occur:
  - Cold starting difficulties.
  - Considerable decrease in engine performance.
- The vehicle must run for approximately 5 kilometres to recognize the new fuel type, in order to prevent any of the scenarios above.

When filling, fuel may be spilt on the ground, polluting the environment. Always fill the at authorized filling stations with proper fluid collection and disposal systems. ◁

Vehicle battery

Introduction

The vehicle battery is a component of the electrical system in the vehicle.

Never carry out any work on the electrical system if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety requirements and only unsuitable tools are available→ ⚠! In this case, all activities must be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose. Serious injuries can be caused if work is carried out incorrectly. ▶

Vehicle battery installation location

The vehicle battery is located in the engine compartment.

Definition of warnings on the vehicle battery


Always wear eye protection!


Electrolyte is very corrosive and caustic. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!


Fires, sparks, smoke, and naked lights are prohibited!


A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is charging!


Always keep children away from acid and the vehicle battery!

WARNING

Works on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause severe chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always read the following warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers before carrying out any work on the vehicle battery and also disconnect the negative cable from the vehicle battery.
- Children should always be kept away from electrolyte and the vehicle battery.
- Always wear eye protection.
- Electrolyte is very aggressive. It can burn the skin and can cause blindness. When working with the battery, ensure that your hands, arms and face in particular are protected from acid spillages.
- Never open a vehicle battery.
- Do not smoke and never work near naked flames or sparks.
- When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid generating sparks and electrostatic charge.
- Never short circuit the battery poles.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery. It can explode. A damaged vehicle battery must be replaced as soon as possible.
- A damaged or frozen vehicle battery must be replaced immediately. A discharged vehicle battery can even freeze at temperatures of around 0° C (+32° F).
- Ensure there is no one inside the vehicle while replacing the battery. In case of electrical failure, airbags may be accidentally engaged and cause severe or even fatal injuries to vehicle occupants.

NOTICE

- Never disconnect the vehicle battery with the ignition switched on or the engine running, and never connect it to another battery; otherwise the electrical system and electronic components may be damaged.
- Do not allow direct sunlight onto the vehicle battery for extended periods, since the UV rays could damage the battery housing.
- If the vehicle is parked for extended periods, ensure the vehicle is not parked in open spaces in order to protect the vehicle battery from “freezing” and being damaged.

Never install damaged or improperly sealed batteries. Dispose of batteries according to environment protection standards → page 168, *Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery*.

After starting the engine with a fully discharged or replaced battery, system settings (such as time, date, convenience settings and programs) may have been deprogrammed or deleted. Check and adjust settings after the vehicle battery is sufficiently charged. ◁

Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 167.

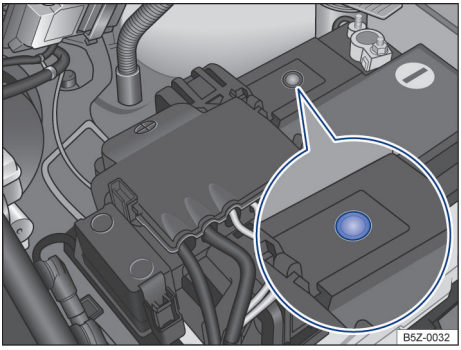


Fig. 159 On the engine compartment: example of display position on the upper side of the vehicle battery.

The electrolyte level of the vehicle battery should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older vehicle batteries. The vehicle battery is otherwise maintenance-free.

Preparations

– Preparation for working in the engine compartment→ page 154

– Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 156.

Checking the electrolyte level

– Ensure that sufficient light is available in order to see the colours clearly. Never use naked flames or glowing items as a light source.

– The round display → Fig. 159 on the top side of the vehicle battery changes its colour according to the electrolyte level.

– Tap lightly on the display to eliminate air bubbles that may affect the colour.

Light yellow* or *without colour The electrolyte level of the battery is too low. The vehicle battery should be checked and replaced by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

Eventual different colours are destined to battery diagnosis at a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Handling the vehicle battery may cause chemical burns, explosions or severe electrical shocks.

- Always wear protective gloves and eye protection.
- Electrolyte is very aggressive. It can burn the skin and can cause blindness. When working with the battery, ensure that your hands, arms and face in particular are protected from acid spillages.
- Never tip the vehicle battery. Electrolyte might leak from the vents and cause chemical burns.
- Never open a vehicle battery.
- In case of spilled electrolyte on the skin or eyes, wash the affected area immediately with cold water for a few minutes. Then seek medical assistance.
- In case of electrolyte ingestion, seek medical assistance immediately.

◁

Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 167.

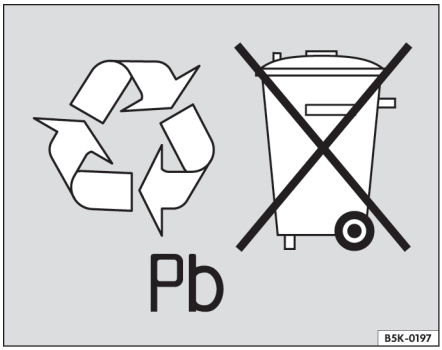


Fig. 160 Batteries contain toxic substances and must be recycled. Therefore, batteries may not be disposed in common trash; they must be returned to the reseller after replacement. ▶

Charging the battery

The vehicle battery should be charged by a qualified workshop, as the technology used in factory-fitted batteries requires voltage-limited charging → ⚠. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

Replacing the battery

The battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features. If a vehicle battery has to be replaced, discuss the electric compatibility, appropriate load capacity (A/h) for the vehicle, size and necessary servicing, output and safety requirements for the new vehicle battery with a Volkswagen Dealership before purchasing. Volkswagen recommends changing the vehicle battery in a Volkswagen Dealership.

Disconnecting the battery

Please note the following points if the vehicle battery has to be disconnected from the electrical system in the vehicle:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers.
- The vehicle must be unlocked before disconnecting the battery as the alarm will otherwise be triggered.
- First disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable → ⚠.

If the vehicle is stationary for a long period of time, disconnect the negative battery cable. Otherwise, the battery could be discharged by the current consumers in the vehicle, preventing the engine from starting.

Connecting the battery

- Switch off all electrical consumers and the ignition before reconnecting the vehicle battery.
- First connect the positive cable and then the negative cable → ⚠.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Set the clock.
- Re-establish operation of the automatic window opening and closing system → page 56.

In case of issues during start-up in low gears, switch the ignition on for 30 seconds and then switch it off. Then, switch the engine on.

Various indicator lamps may light up after the vehicle battery has been connected and the ignition is switched on. Such lamps go out after a few seconds. If the indicator lamps remain lit up, the vehicle should be checked by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

If the vehicle battery was disconnected for long periods, the system may not able to calculate or correctly display the time when the next service is due → page 14. Observe the maximum permissible service intervals in the → page 192.

Automatic consumer deactivation

Through a smart electric management system, in case of high battery demand, different measures are adopted to prevent the battery from being discharged:

- Slow-gear rotation is increased in order for the alternator to provide more current.
- If necessary, some power consumers are limited or deactivated completely, in case of emergency.
- When starting the engine, the 12 V lighter power supply may be temporarily interrupted.

The electric management system does not always prevent the battery from being discharged. This may occur if the ignition remains switched on while the engine is turned off for extended periods, of if the indicator light remains on for extended periods, while the vehicle is parked.

What can cause the vehicle battery to discharge?

- Long periods at a standstill in which the engine is not running, especially if the ignition is switched on.
- Use of electrical consumers when the engine is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect attachment of the battery and the use of incorrect vehicle batteries can cause short circuits, fire and serious injuries.

- Always use maintenance-free and leak proof batteries which have the same properties, specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted vehicle battery.
- Ensure there is no one inside the vehicle while replacing the battery. In case of electrical failure, airbags may be accidentally engaged and cause severe or even fatal injuries to vehicle occupants. ▶

WARNING

A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is charging!

- Vehicle batteries should only be charged in well-ventilated spaces.
- Never charge a frozen or defrosted vehicle battery. A discharged vehicle battery can even freeze at temperatures of around 0° C (+32° F).
- A vehicle battery must be replaced if it has been frozen.
- Incorrectly connected cables can cause a short circuit. First connect the positive cable and then the negative cable.

NOTICE

- Only recode the radio if the battery is reconnected and the radio is switched on before the ignition. Please refer to a qualified Volkswagen Dealership to recode the radio system.
- Never disconnect or connect the vehicle battery with the ignition switched on or the engine running, and never connect it to another battery; otherwise the electrical system and electronic components may be damaged.
- Never connect any power generating equipment, such as solar panels or battery charging units to charge up the vehicle battery, to the 12-volt outlet socket. This can damage the vehicle electrical system.

Batteries may contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. This product cannot be disposed / discarded along with common trash. There are specific legal requirements regarding the disposal / discarding of used batteries. For your safety and convenience, Volkswagen recommends replacing vehicle batteries at a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

The acid solution and lead contained in the battery could contaminate the ground and waters if disposed of incorrectly. Consumption of lead-contaminated waters may cause high blood pressure, several gastrointestinal disorders and anaemia (weakness and drowsiness). ◁

Troubleshooting

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 167.

Vehicle battery

Central warning lamp

The vehicle battery will not be charged by the alternator while the vehicle is in motion.

– Switch off unnecessary electrical consumers.
– Contact a Volkswagen Dealership.
– Have the electric system checked.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any warning lamps or text messages that appear.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to vehicle damages. ◁

Wheels and tyres

Tyre monitoring system

Introduction

The tyre monitoring system warns the driver when tyre pressure is too low.

Depending on the vehicle version, the tyre monitoring system may not be available.

WARNING

The technology shipped with the tyre monitoring system cannot go beyond the limits imposed by physics and will only operate within the limitations of the system. Inadequate use of the wheels and tires may cause a sudden loss of tyre pressure, displacement of the tire treads and even their blowing up.

- Check tyre pressures regularly and always keep to the specified tyre pressure value → page 176, *Tyre pressure*. When the tyre pressure is very low, the tyre can become so hot that the tyre tread may come loose and the tyre blow up.
- Always maintain the correct tyre pressures calibrated with cold tyres according to the indicated on the sticker→ page 176, *Tyre pressure*
- The tyre pressures should be checked regularly on cold tyres. If necessary adjust the tyre pressure → page 176, *Tyre pressure*.
- Check the tyres regularly, looking for wear and tear signs.
- Never exceed the top speed and load capacity permitted for the fitted tyres.

A too low tyre pressure increases fuel consumption and tyre wear.

When driving for the first time with new tyres at high speed, they may expand somewhat and so a single tyre pressure warning may be issued.

Old tyres should only be replaced by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type.

Do not rely only on the tyre monitoring system. Regularly check the tyres to ensure that their pressures are correct and to see whether there are signs of damage, such as holes, cuts, cracks or bubbles. Remove foreign bodies from the tread of the tyre before they penetrate the tyre interior. ◁

Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 171.

The tyre pressure loss indicator compares, assisted by the ABS sensors, the speed and, consequently the rolling circumference of each tyre, among other things. The tyre pressure loss indicator indicates on the instrument cluster a change in diameter of one or more wheels.

Changes to the diameter

The rolling circumference of the tyre can change:

- When the tyre pressure has been changed manually.
- When the tyre pressure is very low.
- When the tyre has structural damages.
- When the vehicle is loaded on only one side.
- When the wheels of one axle are heavily loaded, e.g. when carrying a very heavy load.
- Whether an emergency wheel is mounted.
- When one wheel has been changed.

The tyre pressure loss indicator (!) can be delayed or not display nothing under given conditions such as, for example, when the driving style is very sporty on unpaved roads,

Setting the tyre pressure loss indicator

After a tyre pressure change or after changing one or more wheels, the tyre pressure loss indicator must be reset again. This is also valid when rotating front versus rear wheels.

To reset the system the saved values must first be reset.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Access the submenu **Tyre pressures** on the display of the instrument cluster → page 14. ▶

– When the 4 tyre pressures correspond to the prescribed values, touch the **Confirm** function pad to save the tyre pressures.
– The menu item **Return** cancels the saving of the current tyre pressures and the programming of the system.

The system is programmed after resetting the saved values during the normal driving of the vehicle with the tyre pressures defined by the driver and with mounted tyres. After a long drive at different speeds, the set values are recorded and monitored.

With very high loads on the wheels, for example, in case of a heavy load, before the program, the pressure of the tires must be increased until reaching the recommended full load pressure→ page 176

The tyre pressure loss indicator does not work when the ESC or the ABS are damaged → page 101, *Brake support systems*.

When driving with one emergency wheel, a malfunction warning may appear as the perimeter of the emergency wheel may be different from that of the other wheels. ◁

Tyre pressure loss indicator troubleshooting

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 171.

(!) on

The pressure of one or more tyres went down or the tyre suffered a structural damage.

– **Stop driving!**
– Check all the tyre pressures and adjust → page 173.
– Replace the damaged tyres.
– Resetting the tyre pressure loss indicator again → page 171.
– Should the problem persist, seek specialized assistance.

(!) flashes for about one minute and then remains permanently lit

System damaged.

– **Stop driving!**
– Turn the ignition off and on again.
– Resetting the tyre pressure loss indicator again → page 171.
– Should the problem persist, seek specialized assistance.

⚠ WARNING

Different tyre pressures or very low tyre pressures may result in collapsing tyres, loss of control over the vehicle, accidents, severe injuries and loss of life.

- If the indicator lamp (!) lights up, stop immediately and check all tyres → page 176.
- Different tyre pressures or very low tyre pressures may increase tyre wear, deteriorate stability and increase braking distance.
- Different tyre pressures or very low tyre pressures may result in a sudden collapse of the tyre, causing the tyre to blow up and the loss of control over the vehicle.
- The driver is responsible for the correct pressure in all the tyres of the vehicle. The recommended tyre pressure is always available on the sticker → page 176.
- The tyre monitoring system can only fulfil its mission when all tyres have the correct pressure when cold.
- Using incorrect tyre pressure values may cause accidents and damages to the tyres. All tyres must always have their tyre pressure adjusted to the carried load condition → page 176.
- Prior each trip, always calibrate the tyres to the correct tyre pressure → page 176.
- When travelling with very low tyre pressure, the tyres necessarily undergo more deformations. This way the tyres may get so hot that the tread may come loose, the tyres may blow up and loss of control over the vehicle may occur.
- High speeds and overload may heat a tyre in such a way that the tyre may blow-up and lead to loss of control over the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tyre is not “punctured” and is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest Volkswagen dealership or specialized company, to check and correct the tyre pressures → page 173. ▶

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any warning lamps or text messages that appear.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to vehicle damages.

With the ignition turned on, if a low tyre pressure is detected, the indicator lamp lights up (!). In addition, an acoustic warning sounds and a text message may be exhibited.

When a damage to the system is detected with the ignition turned on, the (!) warning lamp blinks for a while and then stays permanently lit. In addition a text message may be exhibited.

A long drive over unpaved roads or a sportive driving style may temporarily disable the tyre pressure loss indicator. The indicator lamp displays the malfunction, but goes off, however, when the road conditions or driving style change. ◁

Important information on wheels and tyres

Introduction

Volkswagen recommends that work on tyres and wheels is carried out by a qualified workshop. They are familiar with the procedure and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the facilities for proper disposal of old tyres. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

WARNING

Worn or damaged tyres cannot provide full levels of vehicle control and braking power.

- Incorrect handling of wheels and tyres can reduce vehicle safety and cause accidents and severe injuries.
- All 4 wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- New tyres will have to be run in, as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect. Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km in order to prevent accidents and severe injuries.
- At high and continuous speed, tyres with low pressure are excessively heated, which could cause the treads from detaching or even exploding. Always maintain the recommended tyre pressure.
- Never drive with worn tyres or tyres that are damaged (cuts, cracks or blisters). Driving with tyres in this condition can result in blown tyres, accidents and severe injuries. Worn or damaged tyres must be replaced immediately.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.
- The effectiveness of the driver assist systems and brake assist systems depends on the tyre grip.
- If you notice unusual vibrations or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the car immediately and check the wheels and tyres for damage.
- Do not use wheels or tyres if you do not know their previous history. Used wheels and tyres could be damaged, even if the damage is not visible.
- Old tyres – even if never used – may loose pressure or burst, especially at high speeds, and thus cause accidents and severe injuries. Avoid using tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, drive slowly and with extra care at all times.

For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same vehicle type. Consult a Volkswagen Dealership, if necessary. ◁

Handling wheels and tyres

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 173.

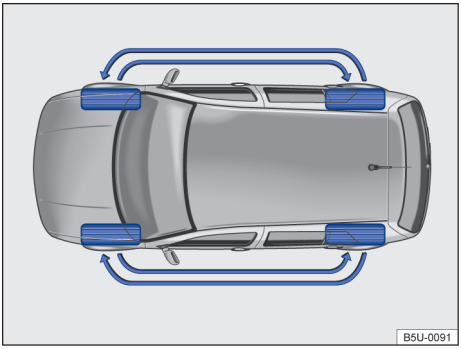


Fig. 161 Diagram showing how to swap wheels.

Tyres are the most used and most underestimated parts of a vehicle. Tyres are very important as the tyre surfaces are the only contact between the vehicle and the road.

The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style, handling, and fitting.

Tyres and wheel rims are an essential part of the vehicle's design. Tyres and wheels approved by Volkswagen are specifically matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling.

Avoiding damages to the tyres

- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive slowly and at a right angle if possible.
- Inspect the tyres regularly for damage such as cuts, cracks or blisters.
- Remove foreign objects that are in the outer tyre tread and **have not penetrated the inner tyre** → page 178.
- If the case, observe the warning messages of the tyres control system → page 171.
- Worn or damaged tyres must be replaced immediately → page 178.
- Regularly check the tyres for hidden damage → page 178.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres → page 182.
- Protect the wheels, including the spare wheel, from contact with corrosive substances, including oils, lubricants, fuel and brake fluid → ⚠.
- Replace missing valve caps immediately.

Rotating wheels

A regular rotation of the wheels as shown in the illustration → Fig. 161 is recommended to ensure a uniform level of wear for the tyres. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

Volkswagen recommends to check the need to rotate the tyres at every servicing of the vehicle, and when there is such need, that alignment and balancing be performed.

Volkswagen recommends having the wheels rotated by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

Storing tyres

Mark tyres before you remove them to ensure you will be able to mount them correctly when replacing (left, right, front, rear). When removed, the wheels or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. **Do not** vertically store tyres mounted on the wheels.

Tyres without wheels should be protected against dirt and stored in proper covers standing on the tread.

New tyres

- Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km with new tyres, as the tyres have to be *run in*. Tyres that have not been run in have reduced grip → ⚠ and braking effect → ⚠.
- All 4 wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- The tread depth of new tyres may differ from manufacturing and profile modelling characteristics according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern. ▶

Replacing tyres

– Tyres should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (e.g. both front tyres or both rear tyres together) → ⚠.
– Old tyres should only be replaced by new tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type. Ensure that the tyres used are correct in respect of size, diameter, load-carrying capacity and maximum speed.
– Never use tyres with an effective size that is larger than Volkswagen-approved tyres. Larger tyres could rub against the body or other parts of the vehicle.

In addition on vehicles with a Tyre Pressure loss indicator

On vehicles with tyre pressure loss control, after each mounting of a wheel, the system must be reset, regardless whether the wheel is the same that was originally mounted there till now or of a new wheel → page 171.

For more information regarding the Tyre pressure control, how it works and what needs to be known→ page 171.

⚠ WARNING

Corrosive liquids and other substances can cause visible and invisible damage to the tyres, which can cause the tyre to burst.

- Always keep chemicals, oils, lubricants, fuel, brake fluid and other corrosive substances away from the tyres.

⚠ WARNING

New tyres will have to be run in, as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect.

- Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km in order to prevent accidents and severe injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Wheels must have the proper necessary freedom of operation. If the wheels do not have the necessary freedom of operation, the tyre could rub on parts of the running gear, the vehicle body and the brake system. This can lead to a fault in the brake system and to tread separation and thus to a tyre bursting.

- The actual tyre size must not exceed the tyre dimensions of manufacturers approved by Volkswagen and must not rub on any vehicle body parts.

Old tyres must be disposed of with specific technical knowledge and equipment, based on specific standards. Therefore, we recommend visiting a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop for such purpose.

Tyre disposal requires equipment and knowledge of applicable environment protection standards. Tyres cannot be disposed / discarded along with common trash. Applicable laws establish specific disposal procedures for these cases. For your safety and convenience, Volkswagen recommends replacing tyres at a Volkswagen Dealership.

Despite identical size details, the actual size of the various tyre makes may vary from these specified dimensions, or the tyre contours may vary considerably.

Volkswagen-approved tyres are guaranteed to have the dimensions that are suitable for the vehicle. The salesperson will have to provide a certificate from the tyre manufacturer for other tyre makes to prove that the tyre is also suitable for the vehicle. This certificate must be stored in a safe place within the vehicle. ◁

Wheels

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 173.

The design of the wheel bolts is matched to the wheels. If different wheels are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and properly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that the wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system works properly → page 186.

For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same vehicle type.

Tyres and wheels approved by Volkswagen are specifically matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling. ▶

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must always be tightened with the correct tightening torque → page 186.

Wheels with bolted-on trims

Wheels may have removable trims which are attached to the wheel with self-locking bolts. Damaged trims may only be repaired by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

Wheel identification

Due to legal requirements in some countries, the information on new wheels may contain some specific wheel features. The following wheel data may be available, depending on the country:

- Seal of conformity
- Rim size
- Manufacturer or brand name
- Manufacture date
- Country of origin
- Manufacturing number
- Raw material
- Part code

WARNING

The use of improper or damaged wheels can impair vehicle safety and cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Only use wheels which have been approved for the vehicle.
- Check the wheels regularly for damage and replace as necessary.

◁

Tyre pressure

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 173.

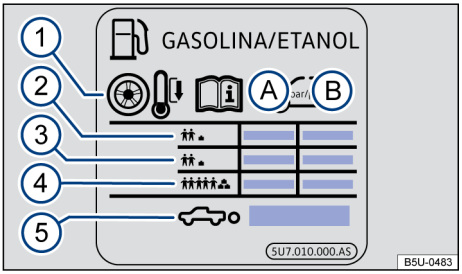


Fig. 162 Sticker with the tyre pressures.

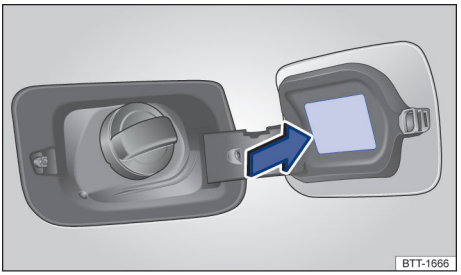


Fig. 163 On the inner side of the fuel tank flap: tyre pressure label.

Indications on the tyre pressure sticker→ Fig. 162:

- Ⓐ Tyre pressures for the front axle tyres.
- Ⓑ Tyre pressures for the rear axle tyres.
- ① Guideline: regularly check the pressure on the cold tyres.
- ② Tyre pressure under partial load.
- ③ *Depending on the vehicle's version:* Comfort tyre pressure under partial load.
- ④ Tyre pressure under full load.
- ⑤ Emergency wheel tyre pressure.

The sticker only indicates the correct tyre pressures for approved tyres and is located on the inside of the fuel tank flap → Fig. 163.

According to the version of the vehicle the appearance of the sticker may vary. Additional tyre sizes may be contained → page 182. ▶

If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well → ⚠. Proper tyre pressure is particularly important at **high speeds**. Incorrect tyre pressure causes premature wear and can cause tyres to burst.

The pressure should therefore be checked at least twice a month and before starting a journey.

The given tyre pressure applies to **cold tyres**. Tyre pressure is always higher in warm tyres than it is in cold tyres.

For this reason, never reduce the pressure in warm tyres to adjust the tyre pressure. This would result in low tyre pressures that could cause the tyre to burst suddenly.

Checking tyre pressure

The tyre pressure should only be checked if the tyres have not been driven for more than just a few kilometres at low speed in the last 3 three hours.

– The tyre pressures should be checked regularly and only when the tyres are cold. Always check all the tyres, including the spare wheel. The tyre pressure should be checked at more regular intervals in colder regions, but only if the vehicle has not been moved beforehand. The tyre pressure tester must function correctly.
– The tyre pressures must be altered to suit the vehicle load.
– After correctly adjusting the tyre pressures, don't forget to put back the valve covers and if necessary, follow the information and guidelines for the configuration of the tyre pressure loss control system → page 171.

The **spare wheel** is filled to the highest tyre pressure permissible for the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

A tyre pressure that is too high or too low may cause the tyre to suddenly lose pressure or burst while the vehicle is in motion. This could lead to severe accidents and fatal injuries.

- Low tyre pressure may cause the tyres to heat to such an extent that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.
- Fast speeds or overloading of the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts and ripping of the tread surface and thus to a loss of control of the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- Check tyre pressures regularly, at least twice a month, and before every long journey.
- All tyres must have the correct tyre pressure to suit the vehicle load.
- Never reduce excess pressure when the tyres are warm.

NOTICE

- When attaching the tyre pressure gauge, make sure that it does not touch the valve shaft. Otherwise, this could damage the tyre valve.
- Missing valve caps, or valve caps which are not suitable or not screwed on properly, may damage the tyre valve. Always use valve caps that comply with the factory-fitted valve cap specifications. Always screw on valve caps fully.

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption.

If the tyre pressure loss indicator issues a warning of low pressure on at least one of the tyres, check the tyre pressure of the tyres with a tyre pressure gage in good working order. A too low tyre pressure cannot be verified only by the visual aspect of the tyre. This also valid for low profile tyres.

When checking the tyre pressures, be aware of the particularities of the tyre monitoring system → page 171. ◁

Tread depth and wear indicators

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 173.

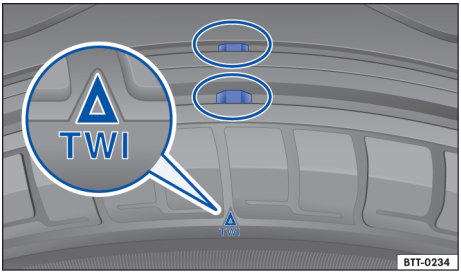


Fig. 164 Tyre profile: wear indicators.

Tread depth

Difficult driving situations demand the deepest possible tread depth for the tyres and the same tread depth for the tyres on the front and rear axles → ⚠.

In most countries, the minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators). Observe any country-specific legal requirements.

Winter tyres lose a large degree of their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm.

The tread depth of new tyres can vary according to type and manufacturer due to construction and tread design.

Tyre wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators running across the tread → Fig. 164. These wear indicators are positioned at set intervals around the tyre. Markings on the tyre sidewall (for instance the letters "TWI" or other symbols indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

Tread wear indicators show if a tyre is worn down. The tyre must be replaced at the latest when the tread depth is just before the tread wear indicator.

⚠ WARNING

Worn tyres threaten the safety of vehicle occupants and may cause loss of vehicle control and severe injuries.

- Tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- Worn tyres have considerably less tread, particularly on wet roads, which can cause the vehicle to "glide" along the road surface (aquaplaning).
- Worn tyres reduce the possibility of controlling the vehicle well in normal and difficult driving situations and increase braking distance and the risk of sliding. ◁

Tyre damage

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 173.

Damage to tyres and wheels is often not readily visible. Unusual **vibrations** or if the vehicle **pulls to one side**, one of the tyres might be damaged → ⚠.

– Reduce your speed immediately if you suspect that a wheel is damaged!
– Check the tyres and wheels for damages.
– If the tyre is damaged, do not drive on. Seek expert assistance.
– If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the closest Volkswagen Dealership or a qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.

Foreign bodies in the tyre

– Leave the foreign body in the tyre if it has entered the inner tyre. However, foreign bodies that are stuck between the tyre tread blocks can be removed.
– Replaced the damaged wheel if necessary. Seek expert assistance if necessary. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.
– Control and correct the pressure.

Tyre wear

Tyre wear is affected by several factors, such as:

– Driving style.
– Unbalanced wheels.
– Running gear setting. ▶

Driving style – Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. The running gear should be checked by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop if the tyres show excessive wear despite a normal driving style.

Unbalanced wheels – The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various factors encountered in normal driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in steering vibration. Unbalanced wheels will affect levels of wear on the steering system and the suspension. In this case the wheels should be balanced again. New wheels must be balanced out prior mounting on the vehicle.

Running gear setting – incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. The wheel alignment should be checked by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop if tyres show excessive wear.

WARNING

Unusual vibrations or if the car pulls to one side while driving, one of the tyres might be damaged.

- Reduce speed immediately and park the vehicle while complying with traffic laws.
- Check the tyres and wheels for damages.
- Never drive on if the wheels or tyres are damaged. Seek expert assistance instead.
- If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the closest Volkswagen Dealership or a qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.

Spare wheel

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 173.

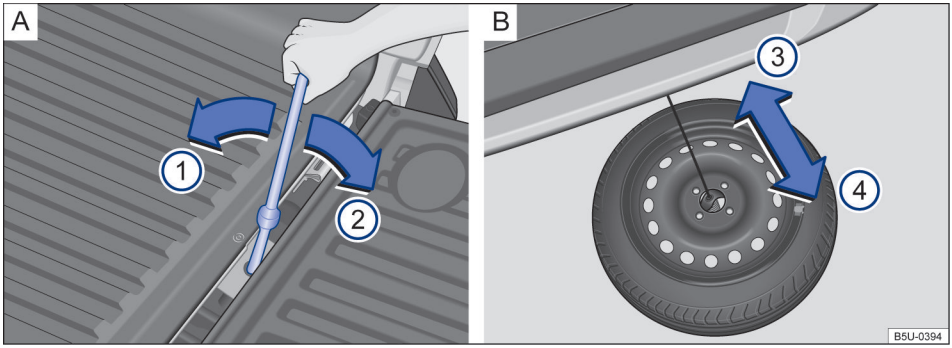


Fig. 165 A In the cargo compartment: access to the temporary spare wheel. B Under the vehicle: spare wheel entirely on the floor and removal from underneath the vehicle.

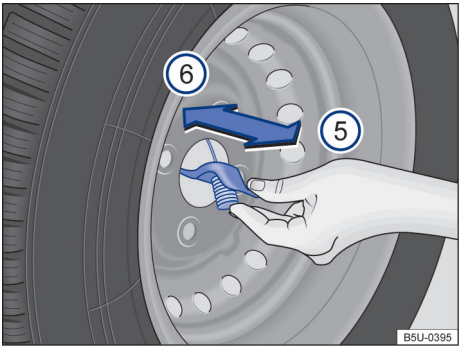


Fig. 166 On the spare wheel: remove the spare wheel cable.

The spare wheel is fastened underneath the vehicle with a cable; it must be turned downwards in order to be removed.

The spare wheel may only be removed when the vehicle is safely parked and all necessary actions and procedures are well known! Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.

Taking the temporary spare tyre from its housing

- To access the spare wheel supporting mechanism screw, open the tailgate → page 52.
- Fit the adaptor → Fig. 130 ③ and the lug wrench ② into the mechanism screw.
- Turn the lug wrench clockwise → Fig. 165 ② until the end of the mechanism's course, even after the spare wheel having completely touched the ground. The end of course is characterized when the wrench is blocked by the mechanism's stop.
- Remove the lug wrench and the adapter from the mechanism screw.
- Close the tailgate → page 52.
- Carefully pull the spare wheel, in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 165 ④, removing it from underneath the vehicle.
- Place the spare wheel in vertical position → Fig. 166.
- Remove the hook from the central wheel hole, in the direction of the arrow ⑥.

Placing the temporary spare tyre into its housing

- Place the spare wheel in vertical position, allowing the filling nozzle to face up, when the wheel is in horizontal position.
- Insert the hook through the central wheel hole, in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 166 ⑤.
- Place the spare wheel in horizontal position; ensure that the filling valve is facing up and that the rim hook is locked through the central hole, thus preventing the spare wheel from becoming loose during the procedure.
- Carefully push the temporary spare wheel, in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 165 ③, placing it underneath the vehicle
- To access the spare wheel supporting mechanism screw, open the tailgate → page 52.
- Fit the adaptor → Fig. 130 ③ and the lug wrench ② into the mechanism screw.
- Turn the lug wrench anti-clockwise → Fig. 165 ①, until the end of course of the mechanism, which is characterized by the wrench's “free” rotation.
- Remove the lug wrench and the adapter from the mechanism screw.
- Close the tailgate → page 52.

In case of difference between the spare wheel and vehicle tyres

If the spare wheel is different from the normal vehicle tyre version, for example, the former may be used only in case of emergency, temporarily and with due precautions → ⚠.

Refit the normal road wheel as soon as possible.

Observe the driving notes:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph)!
- Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road!
- Tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel → page 177.

Tyre pressure of the spare wheel must be checked along with the normal tyres at least twice a month. The spare wheel should have the highest pressure allowed for the vehicle → page 176. ▶

WARNING

Removing the spare wheel can be dangerous, especially when performed roadside.

- Park the vehicle on a flat and solid surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, to collisions or other accidents and cause serious injuries.

- Never use a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel if it is damaged or worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- Never exceed 80 km/h (50 mph). Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and making turns at high speeds!
- Replace the spare wheel with a regular wheel as soon as possible. The spare wheel is only intended for use in short periods of time.
- The temporary spare wheel must always be secured firmly with the wheel bolts supplied by the factory.
- After fitting the temporary spare wheel, the tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible → page 176, *Tyre pressure*.

WARNING

After changing the tyre, always ensure that the vehicle toolkit and spare wheel are properly secured in their respective housings. This measure is necessary and mandatory, and must be observed even in small trips, in order to prevent injuries to individuals inside and outside the vehicle in case of accidents.

CAUTION

Whenever it is necessary to remove or replace the spare wheel in its respective housing, use only the procedure described in this manual.

- Never use electric or pneumatic equipment when removing or installing spare wheels in its housing, in order to prevent vehicle damages.

NOTICE

After removing the spare wheel from the lower part of the luggage compartment floor, retrieve the spare wheel support mechanism cable, in case the wheel to be replaced is not installed in the housing.

When discarding old or damaged tyres, Volkswagen recommends visiting a Volkswagen Dealership, which has all necessary equipment and technical knowledge regarding specific disposal standards for such material.

If possible, firmly fasten the spare wheel or replaced wheel in the spare wheel support under the vehicle. ◁

Tyre lettering

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 173.

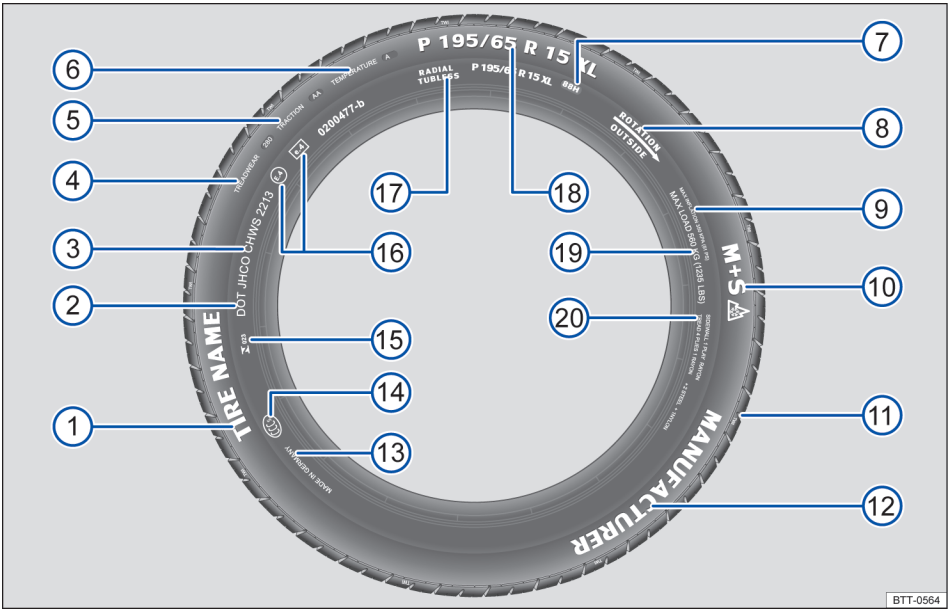


Fig. 167 International tyre lettering (example).

→ Fig. 167	Tyre lettering (example).	Definition	
①	*Product name*	Individual tyre lettering from the manufacturer.	
②	DOT	The tyre complies with the legal requirements of the Department of Transportation, responsible for tyre safety standards.	
③	JHCO CHWS 2213	Tyre identification number (TIN [a]) – in some cases only on the inner side of the wheel) and manufacturing date:	
		JHCO CHWS	Tyre manufacturing origin identification code and manufacturer information regarding tyre size and features.
		2213	Manufacture date 22nd week of 2013.
Information for the end user concerning comparative values for specified basic tyres (standardised test procedure)→ page 209:			
④	TREADWEAR 280	Relative life expectancy for the tyre, based on a standard test. Tyres with a treadwear of *280* tyres wear out 2.8 times slower than regular tyres with a treadwear of 100. Tyre performance varies depending on use conditions and may significantly vary from standard values due to driving behavior, maintenance, different road characteristics and weather conditions.	

→ Fig. 167	Tyre lettering (example).	Definition
⑤	TRACTION AA	Wet braking response of the tyre (*AA*, *A*, *B* or *C*). This rating is measured in certified test tracks, under controlled conditions. Tyres marked with *C* have low traction power. The traction rating assigned to the tyre is based on levelled track tests and does not include acceleration, lateral curves, aquaplaning, or traction under maximum load.
⑥	TEMPERATURE A	Temperature stability of the tyre at higher test speeds (*A*, *B* or *C*). Tyres marked with *A* and *B* exceed legal requirements. The temperature test is based on tyres with the proper pressure and excludes excess pressure. Excessive speeds, improper or excess tyre pressure may heat or damage the tyres, either separately or in combination.
⑦	88 H	Load → page 184 and speed index → page 184.
⑧	Rolling direction and arrow	Identification of the tyre's rolling direction → page 184.
	OR: Outside	Identification of the tyre's outer wall → page 184.
⑨	MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 psi / 3,51 bar)	Limitation for maximum air pressure.
⑩	M+S *or* M/S *or* ❄	Denotes winter tyres (mud and snow tyres). Spiked tyres are identified with an *E* after the *S*.
⑪	TWI	Indicates the position of the Tread Wear Indicator → page 178.
⑫	*Brand name*, *logo*	Manufacturer.
⑬	Made in Germany	Manufacturing country.
⑭	(CCC)	Specific identification for China (China Compulsory Certification).
⑮	INMETRO 023	Specific identification for Brazil.
⑯	E4 e4 0200477-b	Certification of conformity with international requirements with the number of the country that issued the approval. Tyres approved as per ECE regulations are marked with *E*, and tyres approved as per EG regulations are marked with *e*. This is followed by the multi-digit approval number.
⑰	RADIAL TUBELESS	Tubeless radial tyre.
⑱	P 195 / 65 R 15 XL	Size designation:
		P — Identification for passenger vehicle.
		195 — Tyre width from wall to wall in mm.
		65 — Height/width ratio in %.
		R — Tyre construction: radial.
		15 — Wheel diameter in inches.
		XL — Heavy-duty tyres (“Reinforced”).
⑲	MAXIMUM LOAD 615 KG (1235 LBS)	Maximum load per wheel specification.

25C.5L1.SAV.20

→ Fig. 167	Tyre lettering (example).	Definition
	SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Tyre cradle component specifications: 1 Rayon layer (synthetic silk).
⑳	TREAD 4 PLIES 1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	Tread component indications. In this example, there are 4 layers under the tread: 1 layer of Rayon (synthetic silk), 2 layers of steel strap and 1 layer of nylon.

a) TIN is the tyre serial number.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been developed to roll in a single direction. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread . The direction of rotation must be followed. This is the only guarantee for optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

If, however, the tyre is fitted in the opposite direction to the tread pattern, you must take more care when driving as the tyre is now no longer being used according to its designation. This is particularly important on wet roads. Tyres must be replaced as quickly as possible or be fitted with the tread in the correct direction.

Tyre load capacity

The load capacity index indicates how many kilograms can be loaded onto an individual tyre (tyre load).

80 450 kg
85 515 kg
90 600 kg
91 615 kg
93 650 kg
95 690 kg
97 730 kg
99 775 kg
100 800 kg

Speed index

The speed index indicates the maximum permitted speed that may be driven when particular wheels are fitted.

P max. 150 km/h
Q max. 160 km/h
R max. 170 km/h
S max. 180 km/h
T max. 190 km/h
U max. 200 km/h
H max. 210 km/h
V max. 240 km/h
W max. 270 km/h
Y max. 300 km/h

Some tyre manufacturers use the code “ZR” for tyres with a highest permitted speed of over 240 km/h (149 mph). ◁

Winter tyres

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 173.

In winter road conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow. Volkswagen urgently recommends the use of winter tyres or all-year tyres on all 4 wheels of the vehicle, particularly if winter conditions are expected on the roads Winter tyres will also improve the braking response of the vehicle and will help to reduce braking distances in winter weather. At temperatures below +7 °C (+45° F) Volkswagen recommends that winter tyres be fitted to the vehicle.

lose a large degree of their effectiveness when the **tread** is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. Winter tyres also largely lose their effectiveness through **ageing** – regardless of the remaining tread depth.

The following applies when using winter tyres:

– Observe any country-specific legal requirements.
– Use winter tyres on all 4 wheels at the same time. ▶

– Only use in winter road conditions.
– Only use the sizes of winter tyre that have been approved for the vehicle.
– Winter tyres must have the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
– Observe the maximum speed permitted by the speed index → ⚠.

Speed limit

Winter tyres have a speed limitation depending on the speed index → page 184.

If you use **V-rated tyres**, the speed limits and tyre pressure will be determined by engine size. You must ask your Volkswagen Dealership about the highest permitted speed and required tyre pressure.

⚠ WARNING

Improved driving conditions due to the use of winter tyres during winter weather does not mean safety risks must not be prevented.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Never exceed the maximum speed and load limits for fitted winter tyres.

Reassemble summer tyres only after the winter season is over. At temperatures above +7° C (+45° F) vehicle handling is better with summer tyres fitted. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

Volkswagen Dealerships can provide details on permissible winter tyre sizes. ◁

Hub caps

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable hubcaps and fitting the hubcaps incorrectly can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Hub caps which are not fitted properly could become loose while the vehicle is in motion and endanger other road users.
- Do not use damaged hub caps.
- Always ensure that the flow of air to cool the brakes is not restricted or reduced. This also applies when retrofitting wheel trims. If the flow of air is not sufficient, the braking distance could increase significantly.

NOTICE

Remove hub caps carefully and fit them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle. ◁

Wheel bolt cap

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 185.

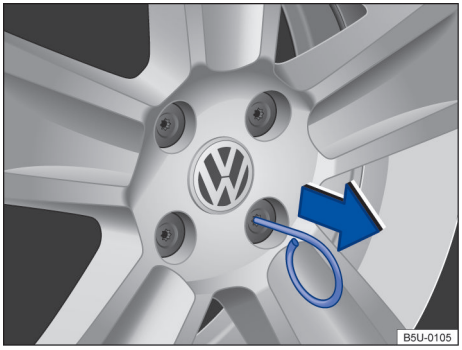


Fig. 168 Removing the wheel bolt caps.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, wheel bolt caps may not be available.

– Take the wire hook from the vehicle toolkit → page 136.
– Insert the hook through the opening in the cap → Fig. 168 and pull off in the direction of the arrow.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

Ensure that the caps are properly secured when fitting them. Otherwise, they could become loose while driving. ◁

Wheel cover

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 185.

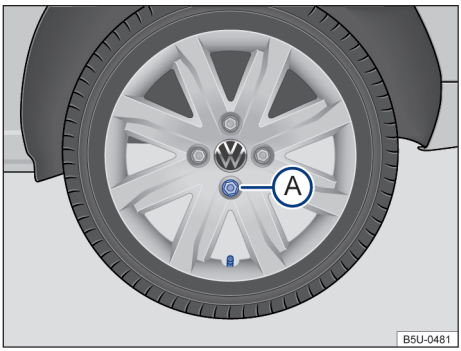


Fig. 169 Removing the wheel covers.

Removing the wheel covers

– Take the lug wrench from the vehicle toolkit → page 136.

– Remove the wheel bolts. The bolt opposite to valve → Fig. 169 Ⓐ serves as a guide in the fitting sequence. Therefore, remove bolt Ⓐ lastly and be careful not to let the wheel cover fall when removing the remaining bolts.

Fitting the wheel covers

Fit bolt Ⓐ first; position the wheel cover and fit the remaining bolts.

NOTICE

The wheel cover is secured to the wheel and may only be removed by first removing the wheel bolts. ◁

Changing a wheel

Introduction

Only change the wheel yourself when the car is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the necessary actions and safety procedures and you have access to all the correct tools! Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.

WARNING

Changing a wheel can be dangerous, especially when carried out at the side of a road. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of serious injuries:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe location. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to carry out the wheel change.
- All passengers, especially children, must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work during the wheel change.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- Make sure that the ground is flat and firm. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
- Only change the wheel yourself if you feel confident carrying out the procedure. Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.
- Always use suitable and undamaged tools to change the wheel.
- Always switch the engine off, pull the handbrake and select a gear to reduce the risk of vehicle movement.
- The wheel bolt tightening torque should be checked with a torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.
- After changing a wheel, immediately program the tyre monitoring system → page 171.

◁

Preparations for changing a wheel

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 186.

Checklist

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for changing the wheel→ ⚠:

1. In case of flat tyres, park the vehicle at a safest distance possible from the traffic flow, in a steady and even terrain.
2. Apply the handbrake → page 95.
3. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition lock → page 86. ▶

Checklist (Continued)

4. Select a gear → page 89.
5. Have all occupants get out of the vehicle and placed in a safe spot away from the traffic.
6. Place a wedge on the opposite wheel, using a rock or similar object.
7. While towing trailers: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
8. With loaded bed: remove luggage items.
9. Take the vehicle tools out → page 136as well as the temporary spare tyre → page 179.
10. Remove the hub cap → page 185 and loosen the wheel screws.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Always follow the instructions on the checklist and comply with applicable safety precautions.

Wheel bolts

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 186.

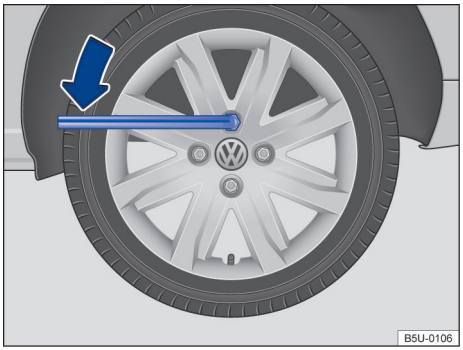


Fig. 170 Changing the wheel: loosen wheel bolts.

Only the spanner delivered with the vehicle should be used to loosen the wheel bolts.

Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack.

If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

Loosening the wheel bolts

– Fit the box spanner over the wheel bolt as far as it will go → Fig. 170.
– Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt approximately *one* turn anticlockwise → ⚠.

Important information about the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts were specifically designed for the factory-fitted wheels. If different wheels are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and properly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that the wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system works properly.

Tightening torque for the wheel bolts

The tightening torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is **110 Nm**. The tightening torque should be checked with a torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.

If the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, they must be replaced and the wheel hub threads cleaned **before the tightening torque is checked**.

Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly tightened wheel bolts can loosen while the vehicle is in motion and cause accidents, serious injury, and loss of control of the vehicle.

- Only use wheel bolts corresponding to the respective wheel.
- Never use different wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs must be clean, free from oil and grease, and turn easily.
- Always use the box spanner placed in the vehicle at the factory to loosen and tighten the wheel bolts.
- Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack.

- Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.

- If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, the wheel bolts and wheels can loosen while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and threads can be damaged if the tightening torque is too high. ◁

Lifting the vehicle with the jack

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 186.

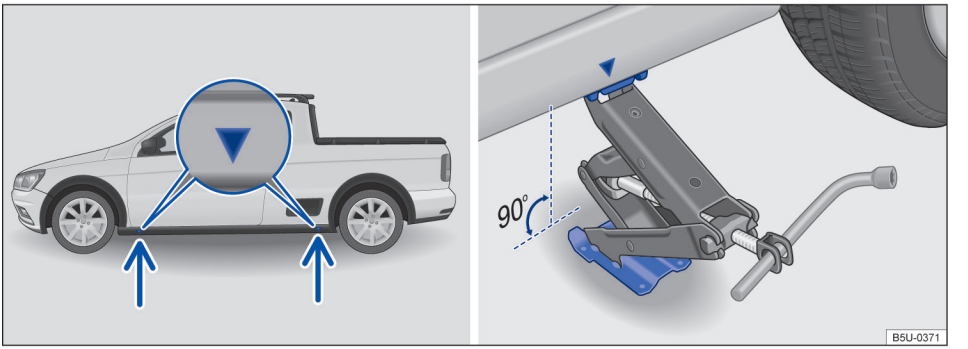


Fig. 171 Jacking points and vehicle jack at the rear left-hand side of the vehicle.

The jack may be applied only at the jacking points shown (markings on the body) → Fig. 171. Always use the jacking point closest to the wheel you are working on → ⚠.

The vehicle must only be lifted by the jack lifting points and after loosening the respective wheel's bolts → page 187.

Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of the passenger, observe the following points in the order given→ ⚠:

1. Find a flat and firm surface suitable for lifting the vehicle.
2. Switch off the engine. Select a gear and pull the handbrake → page 95.
3. Ensure that all passengers leave the vehicle.
4. Place a wedge on the opposite wheel, using a rock or similar object.
5. While towing trailers: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
6. Loosen the wheel bolts on the wheel that is being changed → page 187.
7. Find the jacking point under the vehicle → Fig. 171 closest to the wheel that is being changed.
8. Insert the tip of the wrench in the jack and hold the wrench by the hexagonal end. Raise the vehicle jack until it just fits under the jacking point of the vehicle.
9. Ensure that the entire surface of the foot of the jack is resting securely on the ground and that the foot of the vehicle jack is positioned precisely below the jacking point → Fig. 171.
10. Align the jack and, at the same time, raise the vehicle jack claw until it engages with the cross piece under the vehicle → Fig. 171.
11. Crank the vehicle jack further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to slip, which can lead to severe injuries. Please apply the following rules to reduce the risk of accidents: ▶

- Only use jacks which have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Other vehicle jacks could slip out of position – this includes vehicle jacks supplied with other Volkswagen models.
- The ground must be flat and firm. Tilted or unstable surfaces can cause the vehicle to slide. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the vehicle jack from slipping.
- Fit the vehicle jack only at the points described. The vehicle jack claw must fit securely into the side member rib → Fig. 171.
- When towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer from the traction vehicle before changing the wheel.
- Never place any part of your body (e.g. arm or leg) underneath the vehicle if the latter is only supported by the vehicle jack.
- Ensure that all passengers leave the vehicle.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support.
- Never lift the vehicle while the engine is running or if the vehicle is parked over a slope surface.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised on a vehicle jack. Engine vibrations can cause the vehicle to fall off the vehicle jack.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Always follow the instructions on the checklist and comply with applicable safety precautions.

Lifting the vehicle with the jack - Extreme version

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 186.

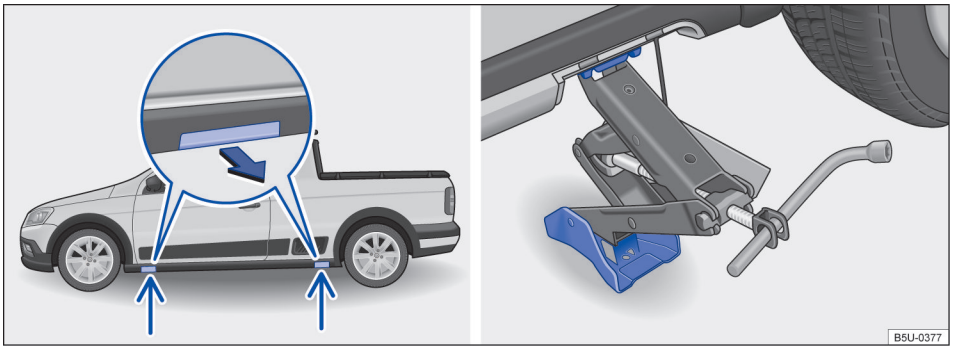


Fig. 172 Jacking points and vehicle jack at the rear left-hand side of the vehicle - vehicles with external sills.

The jack may be applied only at the jacking points shown (removable cover) → Fig. 172. Always use the jacking point closest to the wheel you are working on → ⚠.

The vehicle must only be lifted once the respective wheel's bolts are removed → page 187.

Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of the passenger, observe the following points in the order given→ ⚠:

1. Find a flat and firm surface suitable for lifting the vehicle.
2. Switch off the engine. Select a gear and pull the handbrake → page 95.

Checklist (Continued)

3. Block the wheel diagonally opposite using the collapsible chocks or other suitable items.
4. While towing trailers: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
5. Loosen the wheel bolts on the wheel that is being changed → page 187.
6. Find the jacking point under the vehicle closest to the wheel that is being changed.
7. Remove the jacking point access cover, in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 172.
8. Insert the tip of the wrench in the jack and hold the wrench by the hexagonal end. Raise the vehicle jack until it just fits under the jacking point of the vehicle.
9. Ensure that the entire surface of the foot of the jack is resting securely on the ground and that the foot of the vehicle jack is positioned precisely below the jacking point → Fig. 172.
10. Align the jack and, at the same time, raise the vehicle jack claw until it engages with the cross piece under the vehicle → Fig. 172.
11. Crank the vehicle jack further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack, which can lead to severe injuries. Please apply the following rules to reduce the risk of accidents:

- Only use jacks which have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Other vehicle jacks could slip out of position – this includes vehicle jacks supplied with other Volkswagen models.
- The ground must be flat and firm. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the vehicle jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the vehicle jack from slipping.
- Fit the vehicle jack only at the points described. The vehicle jack claw must fit securely into the side member rib → Fig. 172.
- When towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer from the traction vehicle before changing the wheel.
- Never place any part of your body (e.g. arm or leg) underneath the vehicle if the latter is only supported by the vehicle jack.
- Ensure that all passengers leave the vehicle.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support.
- Never lift the vehicle when the engine is running, or if the vehicle is tilted to the side or on a gradient.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised on a vehicle jack. Engine vibrations can cause the vehicle to fall off the vehicle jack.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the points on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Always follow the instructions on the checklist and comply with applicable safety precautions. ◁

Changing the wheel

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 186.

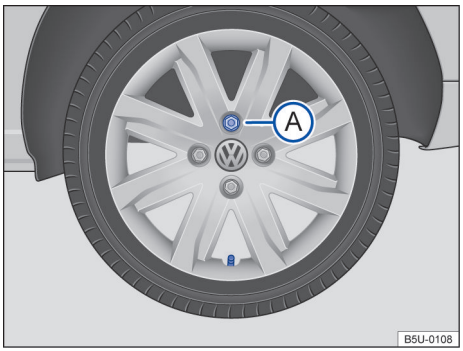


Fig. 173 Wheel replacement: wheel bolt removal sequence.

Removing the wheel

- Read the checklist → page 186.
- Loosen the wheel bolts → page 187.
- Lift the vehicle → page 188.
- Completely unscrew the loose wheel bolts using the lug wrench and place them on a clean surface.
- **In vehicles with wheel covers**, the bolt opposite to valve → Fig. 173 Ⓐ serves as a guide in the fitting sequence. Therefore, remove bolt Ⓐ last and be careful not to let the wheel cover fall when removing the remaining bolts.
- Remove the wheel.

Install spare wheel

If applicable, take note of the running direction of the tyre → page 171.

- Insert the spare wheel.
- *Gently* screw in the wheel bots and tighten them.
- **In vehicles with wheel covers**, fit bolt → Fig. 173 Ⓐ first; position the wheel cover and fit the remaining bolts.
- Lower the vehicle with the jack.
- Use the box spanner to tighten all the wheel bolts securely → ⚠. Do not tighten the bolts in clockwise or anticlockwise sequence. Tighten them in diagonal sequence.
- **In vehicles with central hub cap**, carefully place the hub cap over the wheel bolts → ⓘ, press the hub cap down until you hear a "click" and ensure that the hub cap is properly fitted.

⚠ WARNING

An incorrect torque or incorrectly handled wheel bolts can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always keep all wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs clean and free from oil and grease. Wheel bolts must be easy to turn and be tightened to the specified torque.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Volkswagen recommends special care when removing the central hub cap, since the plastic fittings may be damaged in case of excessive pressure.

Wheel bolts must be clean and able to turn freely. Never lubricate wheel bolts.

When changing wheels, if you notice that the bolts are corroded or worn, they must be replaced before checking the tightening torque. ◁

After changing a wheel

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 186.

- Stow the spare wheel or the removed wheel securely in the housing underneath the vehicle.
- Clean the tools as necessary and place them behind the passenger seat → page 136.
- The tightening torque of the wheel bolts should be checked immediately with a torque wrench
- The damaged wheel should be replaced as soon as possible. ▶

WARNING

After changing the wheel, always ensure that the vehicle toolkit and spare wheel are properly secured in the luggage compartment.

NOTICE

The tightening torque indicated for wheel bolts (steel or alloy) is **110 Nm** and must be ensured with a torque wrench. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

On vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator, immediately program the tyre monitoring system→ page 171.

Maintenance

Service

Maintenance services and digital maintenance and warranty

The **vehicle data label** on the back cover of this instruction manual confirms the **initial release or delivery date, the delivery inspection** and thus the start of the warranty coverage for your vehicle.

For some markets the digital Maintenance and warranty is not available. In this case your Volkswagen Dealership will be able to inform you about its service and documentation.

Digital electronic registration of maintenance services performed

Service vouchers will be stored in the central system memory by the Volkswagen Dealership or specialized company. Through this transparent service history documentation, performed vehicle maintenance work can be accessed at any time. Volkswagen recommends requesting, after each service performed, a printed proof of service containing data on maintenance work stored in the system.

With each new service, the previous proof of service is replaced by an updated printout.

Service

Digital Maintenance and warranty records the following information from your Volkswagen Dealership or specialist company:

- When a given service was performed.
- Whether a repair recommendation was given, as for example, whether the brake pads will have to be replaced soon.
- Which components or fluids have been renewed.
- When your next service call will be due.

WARNING

Insufficient or not performed maintenance and failure to observe the service intervals may cause vehicle stops, traffic accidents, and serious injuries.

- Have the maintenance work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealership or specialist company.

NOTICE

Volkswagen is not liable for damage to the vehicle due to insufficient service or missing parts.

Regular vehicle maintenance services not only serve the purpose to maintain the value of the vehicle, but also contribute to operational and traffic safety. Servicing work should therefore always be carried out in accordance with the Volkswagen maintenance guidelines. ◁

First service

The servicing interval may be different according to the country.

Petrol engines

Service based on time or mileage

Oil Change Service

The service is carried out in accordance with the next servicing indicator, and according to whichever occurs first:

– after 1 year or every 10,000 km;
– after 1 year or every 15,000 km.

TOTALFLEX Engine

Service based on time or mileage

Standard service inspection

The service is carried out in accordance with the next servicing indicator, and according to whichever occurs first:

– after 1 year or every 10,000 km. ◁

Information on the terms of use

The indicated service intervals are established based on **normal driving conditions**.

In case of **adverse driving conditions**, some intermediary services are required between each of the service intervals indicated.

Adverse driving conditions include the following cases:

– fuel with high sulphur content;
– frequent driving at low engine speeds with intense traffic, with extended periods operating at idling speed ("stop-and-go"; urban traffic),
– in short trajectories (below 8 km per day) or with the engine running below ideal temperatures;
– in urban routes with frequent stops;
– high ambient temperature associated to constant use of the air conditioning system
– frequent traffic in unpaved or dusty roads and highways.;
– predominant driving under environments with high levels of suspended particles (mining, cement, steelworks, marble, and saline factories, etc.),
– predominant operation towing trailers or transporting cargoes;
– vehicle operation to provide taxi services, school transportation, deliveries, special services (patrolling, escorting, ambulance, fire trucks, military use) and/or similar applications.

These conditions particularly affect the following parts:

– toothed belt;
– dust and pollen filter
– air filter,
– engine oil.

Your Volkswagen Dealership will inform you of any eventual need to perform intermediary services based on your vehicle driving conditions.

The costs of Volkswagen services may vary according to the vehicle model and equipment version, as well as additional services and inspections eventually required. Your Volkswagen Dealership will inform you of all costs (labour and material) regarding Volkswagen maintenance services. ◁

Service scopes

Depending on the vehicle model/version, some of the scope items may not be available and/or be applicable to the vehicle.

The service scopes include all the necessary **maintenance items** to keep your vehicle in safe condition for driving and the traffic (depending ▶

on the conditions of use and the equipment of the vehicle such as for example, engine, transmission or fluids). The maintenance service work is split between *inspection items* and *maintenance items*. You can consult your Volkswagen Dealership for a detailed overview of the necessary activities .

Inspection items

Electric system

- Battery: check
- Horn: check
- Lighting (interior and exterior): check
- Service interval display: reset

Engine / Gearbox

- Poly V-belt: check
- Engine and engine compartment components (upper and lower parts): check
- Cooling system: check
- Exhaust system: check
- Power transmission and final drive system: check

Running gear

- Coil springs and elastic stops: check
- Protective joint hoods: check
- Power steering: check
- Swivel joints/track rods: check
- Brake fluid level: check
- Shock absorbers and brake pads/discs: check
- Tyres: check
- Tyre pressure of all tyres: check
- Brake system: check

Body

- Body: check for damages and corrosion
- Windshield wiper blades: check
- Windscreen: check
- Underside of the vehicle: check
- Windshield wiper and washer system: check
- Test drive: perform

Maintenance items

In addition to the inspection items (depending on the use and the vehicle's equipment, such as engine, power transmission or fluids), other maintenance items may have to be performed on your vehicle. These items must be looked after based on the *time* and/or *mileage*.

- Additives: change/fill up
- Toothed belt/toothed belt tensioning roller: check/ replace
- Poly V-belt: replace
- Air cleaner: replace
- Fuel filter: replace (only TOTALFLEX vehicles)
- Brake fluid: replace
- Dust and pollen filter: replace
- Engine: replace filter/oil
- Spark plugs: replace

There may be changes to the service scope for technical reasons (continuous components development). Volkswagen Dealerships are always updated about innovations. ◁

Vehicle conservation

Guidelines for the conservation of the vehicle

Regular and expert care helps to **maintain the value** of the vehicle. Proper maintenance may also be one of the requirements for the approval of warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

Suitable care products are available from Volkswagen Dealerships.

WARNING

Car care products can be toxic and hazardous. Unsuitable care products and incorrect application of care products can cause accidents, severe injuries, burns or poisoning.

- Care products must be kept in its original sealed container.
- Read the manufacturer's instructions.
- Never store car care products in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain care products.
- Keep children away from care products.
- The products may generate harmful fumes during use. Such products should therefore only be used outside or in well-ventilated spaces.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids to wash, clean or care for your vehicle. These substances are toxic and highly flammable.

WARNING

Incorrect care and cleaning of vehicle parts can impair the safety features of the vehicle and thus cause serious injuries.

- Vehicle parts must be cleaned according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use approved or recommended cleaning products.

NOTICE

Cleaning agents that contain solvents attack the material and can cause damage.

NOTICE

Never attempt to remove dirt, mud or dust from a dry vehicle surface. Additionally, never use dry cloths or sponges in order to prevent risking the vehicle paint or windows. Dirt, mud and dust must be softened with water before they are removed.

Environmentally-friendly care products should be used.

Leftover car care products should not be disposed of with common waste. Read the manufacturer's instructions. ◁

Washing of the vehicle

The longer substances such as insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other corrosive materials remain on the vehicle, the more damage they do to the paintwork. High temperatures and strong sunlight further intensify the corrosive effect. The **underside** of the vehicle must also be cleaned thoroughly on a regular basis.

Car washes

Please observe the signs on the automatic car wash. Before using an automatic car wash, take the usual precautions, such as closing all windows and folding in the exterior mirrors, in order to avoid vehicle damages. Inform the car wash operator if there are special parts on your vehicle such as spoilers, radio aerials → ⓘ.

The paint is so hard-wearing that the car can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the design of the car wash. Volkswagen recommends the use of car washes without brushes.

To remove any wax residues from the windows and to prevent windscreen wipers from rubbing, please note the following points → page 197, *Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors*.

High pressure washing machine

Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer when cleaning your vehicle using a high-pressure cleaner. This applies in particular to the **pressure** and **spraying distance** → ⚠. ▶

25C.5L1.SAV.20

Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner may cause water to enter the vehicle. Avoid using high-pressure cleaners at distances lower than 30 cm from the vehicle's surface. Using a high-pressure cleaner of over 8,000 kPa (80 bar) could damage or remove paintwork or adhesives.

Maintain sufficient distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses, insulation, and the park distance control sensors. Parking distance control sensors are located in the rear bumper → ⓘ.

Never use **concentrated jet nozzles** or **dirt blasters** → ⚠.

Washing the car by hand

When washing by hand, first soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse off as well as possible.

Then clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **glove** or a **brush**, using only light pressure. Start with the roof and work from the top to the bottom. Use a **shampoo** for very persistent dirt only.

The sponge or glove should be wrung out thoroughly at regular intervals.

Clean the wheels, sill panels etc. last. Use a different sponge for this purpose.

Vehicle paintwork conservation

Waxing protects the paintwork. As soon as water no longer forms **visible drops** on the *clean* paintwork it is time to protect it again with a good **car wax**.

Even when a **wax solution** is used regularly in the car wash, Volkswagen recommends protecting the paint with a coat of hard wax at least twice a year.

Polish the vehicle's paintwork

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax.

The car must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint.

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the vehicle with sharp edges may cause injuries.

- Protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp parts, for example when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.

⚠ WARNING

After the car has been washed, the braking effect could set in later than normal and extend the braking distance as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or iced up in winter.

- "Dry the brakes and eliminate ice" through careful braking manoeuvres. Proceed without putting other drivers at risk or failing to abide by legal requirements.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of a high-pressure cleaner can cause visible and invisible long-term damage to tyres and other materials. This could lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Maintain sufficient distance between the nozzle and the tyres.
- Never clean the tyres with concentrated jet nozzles ("dirt blasters"). Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres.

NOTICE

- Water temperature should not be higher than +60 °C.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight in order to avoid damage to the vehicle paintwork.
- The parking distance control sensors in the bumpers must be clean and free of ice to guarantee correct function. When cleaning with pressure hoses and steam cleaners, the sensors should only be sprayed briefly, always maintaining a distance of over 30 cm.
- Never clean with hard sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar products as these can damage the surface.
- Do not clean windows that are iced over or covered in snow with a high-pressure cleaner.
- Never clean the headlights with a dry cloth or sponge. Soapy water is the preferred choice.
- Vehicle washing under cold weather: if the vehicle is rinsed with a hose, do not direct the water into the lock cylinders or the gaps round the doors, boot, or bonnet. The locks and seals could freeze. ▶

NOTICE

Before using an **automatic washing system**, the following points must mandatorily be checked to prevent damages to the vehicle:

- Make sure that the gap between the guide rails in the car wash is sufficient to prevent damages in wheels and tyres!
- Check that the car wash is tall and wide enough for your vehicle.
- Fold in the exterior mirrors.
- In order to prevent damage to the paintwork on the engine compartment cover, fold the windscreen wipers back onto the windscreen after drying the wiper blades. Do not let them drop!

NOTICE

- In order to avoid damage, painted parts with a matt finish, plastic parts, headlight lenses and the tail lights should not be treated with polish or hard wax.
- Do not polish the paint if the vehicle is in a sandy or dusty environment or if it is dirty.

The vehicle should only be washed in specially provided wash bays. This prevents toxic, oil, grease and fuel laden waste water from entering the sewage system. In some regions, washing vehicles anywhere else may be prohibited. ◁

Clean and conserve the exterior of the vehicle

Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors

Moisten the windows and exterior mirrors with standard alcohol-based glass cleaner.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a lint-free cloth. Chamois leathers which have been used on painted surfaces have grease residues and are therefore not suitable for use on glass surfaces.

Use window cleaner or a silicone remover to clean off rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits →ⓘ.

Remove wax residues

Car washes and care products could leave **wax deposits** on the glass surfaces. Wax residue can only be removed using a special cleaning product or cleaning cloths. Wax residues can affect the windscreen wiper system's performance, in addition to causing irregular movement or excessive noises. Volkswagen recommends using a glass cleaning cloth to remove wax deposits from the windows and exterior mirrors each time the vehicle is washed.

A window cleaner specifically for removing wax will stop the blades rubbing if added to the windscreen washer fluid. Dilute the cleaner as instructed. Grease removing cleaners will not remove wax deposits →ⓘ.

Special cleaners, glass cleaners and glass cleaning cloths are available from Volkswagen Dealerships.

Remove the snow

Use a small brush to remove snow from the windows and exterior mirrors.

Remove the ice

The best method for removing ice is to use a deicer spray. If you use an ice scraper, **do not** move it to and from, but push it in one direction only. Moving the ice scraper backwards can cause dirt to scratch the window.

Clean chrome and aluminium parts

– Use a damp, clean, lint-free and soft cloth to clean the surfaces.
– For heavy soiling use a special **solvent-free** cleaning product.
– Polish the chrome and aluminium trim parts using a soft and dry cloth.

Cleaning steel wheels

Use an industrial cleaner to remove brake dust caught in the wheel. Steel wheels should therefore be cleaned regularly with a separate sponge.

Any damage to the paint on steel wheels should be touched up before the metal starts to rust.

Caring for and cleaning alloy wheels

Wash grit and brake dust from alloy wheels approximately **every 2 weeks**. Then use an acid-free detergent to clean the wheels. Volkswagen recommends applying a hard wax compound to the wheels approximately **every 3 months**. ▶

If the brake dust is not removed regularly, the alloy wheel could be damaged.

Always use an acid-free detergent for alloy wheels. Car polish or other abrasive agents should not be used on the wheels.

If the protective coating is damaged (e.g. by stone impact) the damaged area should be repaired immediately.

Conserve the rubber seals

The rubber seals on the doors, windows etc. will seal better, remain flexible and last longer if they are treated at regular intervals with a suitable care product.

Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the rubber seals before applying the product.

Defrost the door lock cylinders

Volkswagen recommends the use of genuine Volkswagen spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties to de-ice the lock cylinders.

Protection of the underside of the vehicle

The underside of the vehicle is coated to protect it from corrosion and damage. The protective coating on the underside of the vehicle could be damaged when driving. Volkswagen recommends therefore that the protective coating on the underside of the vehicle and on the running gear should be checked regularly and repaired if necessary.

Hollow cavities

All hollow spaces exposed to corrosion are factory-fitted with long-lasting protective coating.

Such coating does not require maintenance. If, due to extremely high temperatures, a small amount of wax is melted, it may be removed using a plastic spatula and benzene.

Clean the engine compartment

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a hazardous area → page 154.

The engine compartment must be cleaned by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. An incorrect cleaning procedure could possibly remove corrosion protection and damage electrical components, among others. Additionally, water could enter the vehicle interior directly via the plenum chamber → ⓘ.

If the engine compartment is very dirty, we recommend that you always go to a qualified workshop to have it cleaned following correct procedures. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

Plenum chamber

– The plenum chamber is located in the engine compartment between the windscreen and the engine and has a perforated cover. Air from outside is drawn in from the plenum chamber and is passed into the vehicle interior via the heating and fresh air or the air conditioning system.
– Leaves and other loose items must be removed from the cover of the plenum chamber at regular intervals using a vacuum cleaner or by hand.

⚠ WARNING

Dirty or misted windows reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Only drive when you have a clear view through all windows.
- Ice, snow and mist must be removed from the inside and outside of all windows.

⚠ WARNING

All work in the engine compartment carries the risk of injury, scalding, accidents and fire!

- Before carrying out any work make sure that you are familiar with the requisite procedures and general safety regulations → page 154, *Safety guidelines for work in the engine compartment*.
- Volkswagen recommends having the work carried out by a Volkswagen Dealership.

⚠ CAUTION

Underseal and anti-corrosion coatings may ignite on the hot exhaust system or on other hot engine parts.

- Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, heat shields or other vehicle components that become hot. ▶

NOTICE

- Properly cleaning the windows enhances the window wiper system's performance and preservation.
- Never combine the recommended cleaning agents with other products in the windscreen washer fluid reservoir. This may cause the components to coagulate and, as a result, clog the windscreen wiper nozzles.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This may cause the glass to crack!
- Never use ice scrapers on mirror lens, otherwise the chromed-coated surface will be scratched.
- The heating elements for the rear window heater (not available in some versions) are located on the inside of the rear window. Never apply stickers over the heating elements and never clean the inside of the rear window with corrosive or acidic detergents or any other chemicals.

NOTICE

To ensure that the chrome and aluminium parts are not damaged:

- Do not clean or polish in direct sunlight.
- Do not clean or polish in sandy or dusty environments.
- Do not use any abrasive care products (e.g. cream cleaners).
- Never clean with hard sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar products.
- Do not polish dirty surfaces.
- Do not use solvent-based cleaning products.
- Do not use any hard wax.

NOTICE

Chrome rims or wheel covers may also have an additional varnish finish and should not be treated using chrome or aluminium cleaning agents or chrome or aluminium polish. Regular paint care and standard cleaning products must be used instead.

NOTICE

Lock de-icers which contain substances which dissolve grease may cause the door lock cylinder to rust.

NOTICE

Water that has entered the plenum chamber via a manual process (e.g. from a high-pressure cleaner) can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

Before removing wax with benzene, comply with applicable safety and environment standards regarding such product.

Considering that when washing the engine, toxic waste water containing oil, grease and fuel may enter the sewerage system, the contaminated water needs to be purified by an oil separator. Therefore, the engine compartment should only be washed in extreme cases and in appropriate locations. ◁

Cleaning and conserving the interior of the vehicle

Modern fabrics, such as dark denim, are often not colourfast. Light-coloured upholstery (soft materials or leather) is particularly sensitive to staining caused by these fabrics, even if you are careful. This is not caused by a fault in the upholstery, but by the non-colourfast nature of the garments.

Leaving stains, dirt and other deposits on the surface of vehicle components and cloth seat covers for a long time can make it difficult to clean and treat them. Stains, dirt and deposits may become impossible to remove, particularly if left for a long time.

Seat covers

Please note the following for handling and conservation of the seat covers:

– Before getting into the vehicle, close all Velcro fasteners that could touch the cloth seat covers and fabric trims. Open Velcro fasteners can cause damage to cloth seat covers and fabric trims.
– Avoid the direct contact of sharp-edged items and accessories to the upholstery and fabric trims in order to prevent damage. Accessories include zips, studs, rhinestones on clothing or belts. ▶

– Dust and grit in the pores and seams should be removed regularly so that no permanent damage is caused to the surface of the seats by scratching.
– Always check whether garments are colourfast to prevent damage to the upholstery. This is especially important for light-coloured upholstery.

Cleaning paddings, fabric and NT - Non microfiber fabric

– Please read and follow the instructions, notes and warnings on the package before using cleaning products.
– Upholstery, fabric trims, NT - non-microfiber fabric trims, and carpeting must be regularly cleaned with a vacuum cleaner (brush tip).
– Do not use high-pressure cleaners, steam cleaners or coolant spray.
– We recommend that you use a soft sponge or commercially available lint-free microfiber cloth for cleaning jobs → ⓘ.
– Clean NT - non-microfiber fabric surfaces with a slightly damp cotton or woollen cloth or a commercially available lint-free microfiber cloth → ⓘ.

General surface soiling of the upholstery and fabric trim can be cleaned with standard foam cleaners.

If the upholstery and fabric trims are generally heavily soiled, consult a Volkswagen Dealership for information on suitable cleaning methods before attempting any cleaning procedure. Take the vehicle to a specialist cleaning company, if necessary.

Padding, fabric and NT - Non microfiber fabric stain treatment

When cleaning stains, it may be necessary to clean the entire surface and not just the stain itself. This particularly applies if the surface shows general signs of wear. The cleaned area could otherwise be lighter than the surrounding area. If in doubt, consult a specialist cleaning company.

Type of stain	Recommended seat cover and upholstery cleaning process
Water-based stains (e.g. coffee, fruit juice or soda).	– First, clean the stain as quick as possible with a dry and absorbent cloth, in order to prevent the liquid from penetrating the upholstery. – For more difficult stains, moisten the sponge with an atomizer and clean the stain in circular motions. – Clean with a dry and absorbent cloth.
Stubborn stains, e.g. chocolate, make-up.	– Only use cleaning products approved by Volkswagen. – Take the vehicle to a specialist cleaning company, if necessary.
Oily stains, e.g. oil, lipstick.	

Conservation and treatment of natural leather covers

Please contact a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop if you have any questions on cleaning and caring for the leather equipment in your vehicle.

Natural leather is a sensitive material.

– Use a leather cream with sunlight protection and impregnation properties on a regular basis and always after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, keeps it breathable and supple and replaces lost moisture. It also protects the surface.
– Leather should be cleaned every two to three months to remove fresh stains.
– Treat the leather with a special leather care product every six months → ⓘ.
– Always apply cleaning and care products extremely sparingly and always use a dry cotton or woollen cloth that is lint free. Do not apply cleaning and care products directly to the leather.
– Remove fresh stains such as ink, ball-point pen ink, lipstick, shoe cream etc. as quickly as possible.
– Look after the pigment. Use a special coloured leather cream to refresh the colour where necessary.
– Wipe off excess with a soft cloth. ▶

Cleaning natural leather covers

Volkswagen recommends that you use a damp cotton or wool cloth for general cleaning purposes.

Do not let the water soak through the leather or soak into the seams.

Please observe the following notes **before cleaning** the leather upholstery → page 200, *Cleaning paddings, fabric and NT - Non microfiber fabric*.

Type of stain	Cleaning
Stubborn stains	– Spread the smooth soap solution[a] with a twisted cloth. – Absorb by pressing lightly with a dry cloth.
Water-based stains, such as coffee, tee, juice, blood, etc.	– Remove stains while they are still moist with an absorbent cloth. – Use a cleaning product appropriate for dry stains → ⓘ.
Oily stains, such as oil, lipstick, etc.	– Remove stains while they are still moist with an absorbent cloth. – Use a cleaning product appropriate for stains that still have not penetrated the surface → ⓘ.
Special stains, such as biro, felt tip pen, nail varnish, emulsion paint, shoe polish, etc.	– Dry with a dry and absorbent cloth. – Clean with a special leather stain remover.

a) Smooth soap solution: two teaspoons of neutral soap in one litre of water.

Cleaning vinyl covers

Please observe the following notes before cleaning vinyl covers → page 200, *Cleaning paddings, fabric and NT - Non microfiber fabric*.

Only use water and neutral soap to clean vinyl covers.

Cleaning stowage compartments and drink holders

Some stowage compartments and cup holders have a removable rubber insert in the base.

– Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and clean the parts.

– If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning product.

Conserving and cleaning plastic parts, wooden decorative elements and the dash panel

– Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and clean the parts.

– Treat *plastic parts (inside and outside the vehicle) and the dashboard* with a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning and care product approved by Volkswagen → ⚠.

– Treat *wooden trims* with a mild soap solution[1].

Cleaning the seatbelts

The automatic belt will not be able to roll back properly if there is dirt on the belt and thus prevent the seat belt from working properly.

Seat belts must never be removed for cleaning purposes.

– Remove dirt with a soft brush → ⚠.

– Carefully pull the dirty seat belt right out and leave it out.

– Clean the seat belt with a *mild*[1] soap solution.

– Allow the seat belt fabric to dry completely.

– Do not allow the seat belt to roll up until it has dried completely.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect care and cleaning of vehicle parts can impair the safety features of the vehicle and thus cause serious injuries.

- Vehicle parts must be cleaned according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use approved or recommended cleaning products.

⚠ WARNING

Cleaning agents that contain solvents cause the surface of the airbag modules to become porous. In case of an accident that triggers the airbag, loose plastic parts can cause serious injury. ▶

1) Smooth soap solution: two teaspoons of neutral soap in one litre of water.

- Never clean the dash panel or the airbag covers with cleansers that contain solvents.

WARNING

Check the condition of all seat belts regularly. Damaged belt bands or any other seat belt parts must be removed and replaced immediately by a Volkswagen Dealership. Damaged seat belts are extremely dangerous and can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Never use chemical cleaning agents on the seat belts or their components. Additionally, seat belts may not come into contact with corrosive fluids, solvents or sharp objects. This can considerably weaken the bands.
- After cleaning, allow seat belts to dry completely before rolling them up. Otherwise the automatic belt retractors could become damaged and thus impair their function.
- Never let any foreign bodies or liquids enter the seat belt buckle slot. This could prevent the belt buckle and seat belt from working properly.
- Never attempt to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself.
- Damaged seat belts must be replaced immediately with new seat belts approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Seat belts subjected to stress and stretched during an accident must be replaced by a Volkswagen Dealership. Replacement may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.

NOTICE

- Cleaning agents that contain solvents attack the material and can cause irreparable damages.
- Stains, dirt, and other deposits with corrosive components and solvents may cause irreparable damages to the material, even in case of short exposure periods.
- Stains, dirt and other deposits must be removed as quickly as possible and not allowed to dry in.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a specialist cleaning company.

NOTICE

- Do not use steam cleaners as the steam pushes the soiling into the fabric and sets it.
- High-pressure cleaners and coolant sprays can damage the upholstery.

NOTICE

- Soft-bristle brushes should be used on carpets and mats only! Other surfaces could be damaged by brushes.
- When washing paste or fine detergent solutions are applied with a damp cloth or sponge, visible edges may appear on the upholstery once it has dried. These edges are usually difficult or even impossible to remove.

NOTICE

- The NT - non-microfiber fabric cannot be drenched in any circumstances.
- Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers or similar products on NT - non-microfiber fabric.
- Do not use brushes if cleaning with liquids. This could damage the surface of the material.

NOTICE

- Never use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on leather.
- A stain cannot be removed if it has been left on the leather for a long time and has penetrated the surface.
- Spilt liquids should be cleaned immediately using an absorbent cloth as the leather surface and seams absorb liquids quickly.
- Protect the leather from excessive sun exposure to prevent fading.

NOTICE

Never use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on vinyl. These may cause the material to become hard and brittle prematurely.

NOTICE

Some car fresheners have substances in its chemical formula that may damage the structure, surface and paintwork of the vehicle's internal linings.

Suitable care products are available from a Volkswagen Dealership.

Volkswagen recommends cleaning stained upholstery in a qualified workshop. ▶

Slight colour changes of the natural leather covers due to use are normal. ◁

Accessories, modifications, repairs and part replacement

Accessories and spare parts

Volkswagen recommends that you seek advice from a Volkswagen Dealership before purchasing accessories, spare parts or service fluids. For example, if the vehicle is to be retrofitted with accessories or if parts have to be renewed. Volkswagen Dealerships can recommend accessories, parts and service fluids which are suitable for your requirements.

Volkswagen strongly recommends that you only use approved **Volkswagen Accessories** and **Volkswagen Genuine Parts**. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety. Volkswagen Dealerships are also qualified to perform proper installation procedures.

Despite constant monitoring of the market, products **not approved by Volkswagen** cannot be evaluated by Volkswagen in terms of their credibility, safety and suitability for use in the vehicle. Volkswagen can therefore assume no responsibility for these parts, even if they have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly performed repairs or modifications to your vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the airbags, cause operating failures, accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never secure or mount objects such as cup holders, telephone holders and GPS (global positioning system) on or next to the airbag covers or within the deployment zone of the airbag.
- Items which are either on or next to the airbag module covers or are in the deployment zone of the airbags can cause severe or even fatal injuries should the airbags be activated. ▶

25C.5L1.SAV.20

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable spare parts and accessories as well as incorrectly carried out work, modifications and repairs can lead to damage to the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.

- Volkswagen strongly recommends that you only use approved Volkswagen accessories and Volkswagen genuine parts. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety.
- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealership. Volkswagen Dealerships have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.
- Never fit parts to your vehicle that are in any way different from the factory-fitted parts.
- Never secure or mount objects such as cup holders, telephone holders and GPS (global positioning system) on or next to the airbag covers or within the deployment zone of the airbag.
- Only use wheel/tyre combinations which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. ◁

Repairs and technical modifications

Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications→ ⚠!

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause faults As the electronic components are linked together in networks, these faults may indirectly affect the working of other systems. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also compromise the vehicle's operating function.

The authorised Volkswagen repairer cannot be held liable for any damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

The authorised Volkswagen repairer cannot be held liable for any damage caused by technical modifications and repairs performed incorrectly. Such damages are also not covered by the Volkswagen warranty.

Volkswagen recommends that all repairs and technical modifications be performed by an authorised Volkswagen Dealership with **Volkswagen Genuine Parts**.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause functional problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the driver assist systems. This could lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealership. ◁

Repairs and limitations in the airbag system

Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications→ ⚠!

Modifications and repairs to the front bumper, the doors, the front seats, the roof or the bodywork should be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealership. System components and airbag system sensors can be located on these vehicle components.

If you work on the airbag system or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the airbags is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Volkswagen Dealerships are familiar with such requirements.

Any modifications to the vehicle's suspension could prevent the airbag system from working properly during a collision. For example, using tyre/ wheel combinations which have not been approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, making modifications to the suspension rate including work on the springs, struts and shock absorbers could cause the forces which are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit to change. Some changes to the suspension could cause the forces measured by the sensors to increase. This can lead to the ▶

airbag system being triggered in collision scenarios where it normally would not be triggered if modifications to the suspension had not been made. Other modifications can cause the forces measured by the sensors to decrease, preventing the airbag system from being triggered when it should have been.

WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause functional problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the airbag system. This could lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealership.
- Airbag modules cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.
- Never use recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.

WARNING

Modifications to the vehicle's suspension, including the use of unsuitable tyre/wheel combinations not approved by Volkswagen may cause the airbag system to work differently and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Never install any components in the suspension system that do not have the same characteristics as the original factory-fitted components.
- Never use tyre/wheel combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen.

Airbag system parts must never be reused in case of vehicle or component scrapping. All applicable environment disposal standards must be followed, in addition to other safety standards in effect. Volkswagen Dealerships are familiar with such requirements. ◁

Retrofitting two-way radios

You will need an external aerial to use a two-way radio in the vehicle.

Any retrofit installation of electrical or electronic equipment in the vehicle will affect its vehicle type approval. Under certain circumstances, this can negate the type approval for the vehicle.

Volkswagen has approved the vehicle for use with two-way radios providing the following conditions are observed:

– Correct installation of external aerial.
– Maximum transmitting power of 10 watts.

An external aerial is needed to give the equipment its optimal range.

Should a two way radio need to be installed with a transmission power of more than 10 W, contact a specialized company. A qualified workshop is familiar with the technical options for retrofitting. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen Dealership for this purpose.

Please observe legislation as well as the instructions and information given in the operating manuals for radio equipment.

WARNING

If radio equipment is not secured or not properly secured in the vehicle, it could be flung though the interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident. This can cause injuries.

- While the vehicle is in motion, always secure two-way radios properly outside the airbag deployment zones or stow them away safely.

CAUTION

If two-way radios that are not connected to an external aerial are used, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values and thus be a health hazard for drivers and other vehicle occupants. This also applies to external aerials which have not been correctly installed.

- Two-way radios should only be used in the vehicle if an external aerial is properly connected. ◁

Information stored in control units

Your vehicle is factory fitted with electronic control units which are responsible for engine and transmission management. The control units also monitor the function of the exhaust system and the airbags.

These electronic control units continuously evaluate data relevant to the vehicle while the vehicle is being driven. Only this data will be stored if there are any faults recorded or any deviations from the specified values. This is generally displayed by the indicator lamps on the instrument cluster.

Special units are required to read and evaluate data stored in the control units.

Under no circumstances do such control units record conversations held inside the vehicle.

Reprogramming control units

All data for the control of components is initially stored in the control units. Some convenience functions, such as lane change flash, single door unlocking and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If the convenience functions are reprogrammed, the descriptions in your vehicle wallet will no longer correspond with the original functions. Volkswagen recommends adding the reprogramming coverage to the digital warranty and maintenance at a Volkswagen Dealership.

Information about possible reprogramming can be obtained from Volkswagen Dealerships.

Reading the vehicle fault memory

A diagnosis interface for reading the fault memories is located in the vehicle interior → ⚠. Electronic control unit status and operating data is stored in the fault memory. Additional information on stored data can be obtained from your Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

The diagnostics connection is located on the driver's side footwell, near the fuse box.

The fault memory should only be read and reset by a Volkswagen Dealership.

After correcting faults, the respective data is deleted from the fault memory. Other memory contents are successfully updated.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the diagnostics connection may lead to operating faults, in addition to severe accidents and injuries.

- Never read the faulty memory through the diagnostics connection yourself.
- The diagnostics connection must only be read by a Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop. ◁

Using a mobile telephone in the vehicle without a connection to the external aerial

During a telephone call and when in standby mode, mobile telephones transmit and receive radio waves, also known as high-frequency energy. Current scientific literature warns us that radio waves can be harmful to human beings if they exceed certain limits. Government agencies and international committees have introduced threshold values and guidelines to ensure that electromagnetic radiation produced by mobile telephones does not pose a hazard to health. However, there is no proven scientific evidence that demonstrates that cordless telephones are absolutely safe.

For this reason, some experts are calling for a precautionary use of mobile telephones through the application of measures which reduce the level of personal exposure to electromagnetic radiation.

If a mobile telephone which is not connected to the vehicle's external aerial is used inside the vehicle, the level of electromagnetic radiation could be higher than when the mobile telephone is connected to an integrated aerial or any other external aerial.

If the vehicle is fitted with a suitable hands-free system which enables the use of innumerable additional functions of Bluetooth® compatible mobile telephones, this will comply with legal requirements in many countries which permit the use of a mobile telephone in a vehicle only if a hands-free system is used. ▶

Mobile telephones must be located in a suitable telephone holder or be stored securely in the vehicle. If a telephone holder is used it must be securely attached to the base plate. This is the only way to ensure that the mobile telephone is securely attached to the dashboard and always within reach of the driver.

If the mobile telephone is connected to a telephone aerial integrated in the vehicle or to an external telephone aerial, the electromagnetic radiation generated by the telephone that could affect the human body is reduced. Moreover, it improves the quality of the signal.

If a mobile telephone is used in the vehicle interior without this hands-free system, it is not safely secured in the vehicle and also not connected to the vehicle's external telephone aerial. Furthermore, the mobile telephone is not being charged in the telephone holder. It is also likely that the telephone connection will be disrupted and the signal strength will be poor.

A mobile telephone should only be used in the vehicle if it is connected to a hands-free unit. Volkswagen recommends the use of an external aerial when using a mobile telephone in the vehicle.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth ® SIG, Inc.

WARNING

If a mobile phone is not secured or not properly secured in the vehicle, it could be flung though the interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident. This can cause injuries.

- Mobile telephones, other devices and telephone accessories such as telephone holders, notepads and GPS (global positioning system) must always be secured properly outside of the airbag deployment zones or be stowed in a safe place whilst the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

If mobile telephones or two-way radios that are not connected to an external aerial are used, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values and thus be a health hazard for drivers and other vehicle occupants. This also applies to external aerials which have not been correctly installed.

- Maintain a minimum distance of 20 centimetres between the mobile phone's antenna and the heart pacemaker, since the former may interfere with the latter.
- Do not carry a mobile telephone in your breast pocket above a pacemaker.
- The mobile telephone must be switched off immediately if there is a suspicion of interference with a pacemaker or other medical devices. ◁

Vehicle lifting points

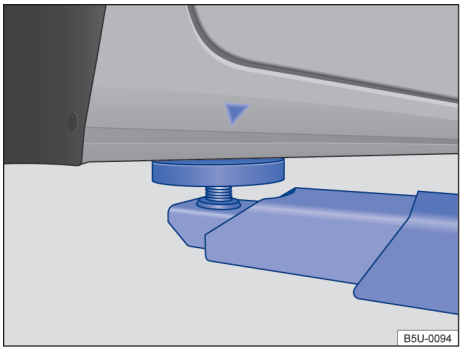


Fig. 174 Front lifting points for lifting with platform or vehicle jack.

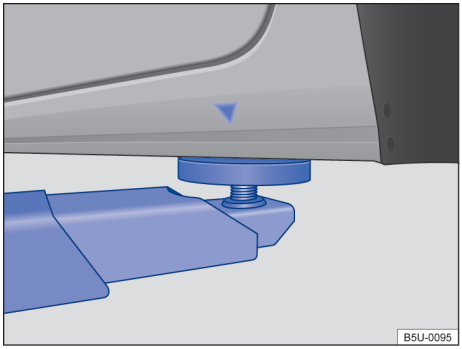


Fig. 175 Rear lifting points for lifting with platform or vehicle jack.

For vehicles equipped with external sills, the jacking point access cover must be removed before lifting the vehicle → page 186.

The vehicle may only be lifted at the points shown in the illustrations → Fig. 174 and → Fig. 175. If the vehicle is not raised on the ▶

lifting points shown, the vehicle could be damaged → ⓘ. There is also a risk of severe injuries → ⚠.

Hydraulic lifting platforms may not be used for lifting the vehicle.

There are many precautions that have to be followed when lifting a vehicle on a lifting platform or floor jack. Do not try to lift a vehicle on a lifting platform or vehicle jack unless you have the training, knowledge and experience to be able to do so safely.

Instructions to lift the vehicle with the jack → page 186.

⚠ WARNING

Lifting your vehicle incorrectly with a lifting platform or vehicle jack can cause accidents and serious personal injury:

- Always read and heed the operating instructions from the lifting platform or vehicle jack manufacturer and any legal regulations before lifting the vehicle.
- All occupants must leave the vehicle before it is lifted.
- The vehicle may only be lifted at the points shown in the illustrations → Fig. 174 and → Fig. 175. If the vehicle is not lifted at the points shown, it could fall off the lifting platform when work is carried out, e.g. when the engine or transmission is removed.
- The vehicle jacking points must be placed on the centre of the support surfaces of the vehicle lift and have as much contact as possible.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised! The vibration of the engine could cause the vehicle to fall off the lifting point.
- If work has to be carried out underneath the lifted vehicle, secure the vehicle with suitable jack stands with a sufficient load-bearing capacity.
- Never climb up the lifting platform.
- Always ensure that the vehicle is not heavier than the lifting capacity of the lifting platform.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- Never lift the vehicle on the engine oil sump, the transmission or the front or rear axle.
- To prevent damage to the underside of the vehicle when lifting, rubber pads must be used. Make sure that the lifting platform arms are able to move freely.
- The lifting platform arms must not be allowed to come into contact with the sills or any other part of the vehicle. ◁

Consumer information

Volkswagen warranty

Volkswagen Dealership Warranty

Volkswagen Dealerships provide a warranty against manufacturing defects for the vehicles sold by them.

Volkswagen Dealerships provide a warranty against manufacturing defects for new vehicles.

Please refer to your purchase agreement for more information on warranty terms and conditions.

For additional information, please contact your Volkswagen Dealership.

The warranty does not cover natural wearing, damages caused by abusive vehicle use, improper maintenance, or unauthorized modifications.

If your vehicle is not operating properly, please contact the nearest Volkswagen Dealership. ◁

Body warranty

Volkswagen Dealerships grant vehicles they sell a warranty against puncture corrosion on the body.

In addition to the warranty terms for new Volkswagen vehicles, Volkswagen Dealerships also grant on the vehicles they sell – according to the purchase contract– a warranty against perforating body corrosion over a period of time limited to **6 years**.

In case such defects are eventually identified, they will be fully repaired by any Volkswagen Dealership free of charge.

The warranty is voided in the following cases:

- defects result from external influences or lack of proper vehicle maintenance; or
- any body defects are not repaired in a timely fashion, as per the Factory's instructions; or
- corrosion perforations result from noncompliance with the manufacturer's instructions regarding body repairs.

After conducting due body repair services, your Volkswagen Dealership will confirm due warranty coverage for corrosion perforations in the repaired area. ◁

General information

Volkswagen offers one of the largest and most efficient Dealership Network to assist your vehicle.

Volkswagen Dealerships are equipped with cutting-edge equipment and tools designed especially for your vehicle, in addition to highly-qualified technical personnel and a wide range of vehicle parts.

All Volkswagen Dealerships abide by high-end standards recommended by the Factory. These include Service instructions, which ensure all repair activities are carried out based on optimal quality standards and in a timely fashion, guaranteeing appropriate and safe vehicle conditions.

Volkswagen Dealerships are clearly prepared to assist your vehicle. Make sure you don't miss out on all of these amenities. ◁

Additional service offers

Mandatory inspection services

Depending on local laws, the vehicle must be submitted to periodic mandatory inspections.

In several countries, vehicles must be periodically submitted to inspections conducted by competent authorities, duly evidencing its effective and safe traffic operation and/or exhaust system conditions.

Volkswagen Dealerships are aware of all mandatory inspections and duly qualified to perform such verification services, along with an inspection service. This will save you time and money.

They will indicate aspects that require special attention in order to prevent your vehicle from being submitted to new inspections due to faults. ◁

25C.5L1.SAV.20

Volkswagen® Genuine Parts

Volkswagen® Genuine Parts are particularly designed for your vehicle and approved by Volkswagen, especially regarding safety measures. These parts accurately comply with Factory specifications regarding type, measurements, and materials. Volkswagen® Genuine Parts are the most suitable for your vehicle. Therefore, we recommend always using Volkswagen® Genuine Parts. Volkswagen does not guarantee the reliability, safety, and suitability of non-original parts.

The most essential Volkswagen® Genuine Parts are virtually always available in stock. If any specific part is not available in stock, it can usually be ordered and received in brief periods of time.

Volkswagen Dealerships offer a warranty for Volkswagen® Genuine Parts after assembly or purchase. Always keep your Volkswagen Dealership invoice for warranty purposes.

For additional information, please contact your Volkswagen Dealership.

Warranty claims regarding these parts can be filed **at any Volkswagen Dealership**. ◁

Original Volkswagen accessories

We recommend using original Volkswagen accessories and other accessories approved by Volkswagen.

Please follow the recommendations below when equipping your vehicle with accessories:

Only use original Volkswagen accessories or other accessories duly approved by Volkswagen, whose reliability, safety, and suitability have been duly tested for the specific vehicle model. Volkswagen does not guarantee the reliability, safety, and suitability of non-original parts.

Volkswagen Dealerships offer a warranty for original accessories after assembly or purchase. Always keep your Volkswagen Dealership invoice for warranty purposes.

For additional information, please contact your Volkswagen Dealership.

In addition to providing accurate and updated information, the Volkswagen Accessories Service also offers optional equipment assembly services by qualified personnel.

In addition, Volkswagen Dealerships offer all appropriate products to maintain and care for your vehicle. ◁

Information stickers and plates

Safety certificates, stickers and plates containing important information on operating the vehicle are factory-fitted in the engine compartment and on certain parts such as the tank flap, passenger sun visor, the driver door pillar or in the luggage compartment floor.

– Never remove or damage the safety certificates, stickers and plates. They must remain legible at all times.
– If vehicle parts bearing safety certificates, stickers or plates are removed from the vehicle, replacement safety certificates, stickers or plates with the same information must be applied properly to the new parts by Volkswagen Dealership or qualified workshop.

Safety certificate

A safety certificate on the door pillar of the driver door provides the information that all necessary safety standards and specifications of the transport safety authorities of the individual country have been met at the time of production. The month and year of production and the chassis number may also be listed.

High voltage warning stickers

There is a sticker near the engine compartment cover lock that provides a warning of the high voltage in the electrical system of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Handling the vehicle incorrectly increases the risk of accident and injuries.

- Legal provisions must be followed.
- Consult the Owner's Manual.

NOTICE

Handling the vehicle incorrectly may cause damages to the vehicle.

- Legal provisions must be followed.
- Perform maintenance services as prescribed. ◁

Installing the radio

Follow the recommendations below when retrofitting a radio or replacing a factory-fitted radio:

- In some versions, existing vehicle connections were designed for original Volkswagen radios, as of the model year of 2005.
- Radio devices with different connections will have to use adapting cables, which are available at Volkswagen Dealerships.
- Radios **not** covered in the Volkswagen Original Accessories Programme may require additional adaptors if the signal feed is weak.
- Radios should be installed at a Volkswagen Dealership, whose personnel is qualified and trained on technical specifications of vehicles and if there are original radios and assembly parts required from the Volkswagen Accessories Programme, as well as the fact that all activities are conducted based on factory guidelines.
- The maximum power of original factory-fitted speakers is 20 W (RMS).
- Volkswagen recommends also using speakers, assembly sets, aerials and interference suppression kits of the Volkswagen Accessories Programme. These parts were designed especially for each vehicle type.

WARNING

Never cut the connection wire, leaving it exposed. This may cause fires.

NOTICE

- Different radio connections may destroy or affect important electrical components. Eventual interferences, such as the speed signal, may cause faults in the engine, ABS system, etc.
- Simply connecting the speed signal to a radio with automatic volume adjustment from different manufacturers may cause such faults. ◁

Headphones

When using mobile phones or other devices, consult the respective owner's manual, applicable laws and standards regarding the use of headphones. For example, driving while using headphones is prohibited in Brazil.

WARNING

When using headphones while driving, exterior acoustic signals, such as police and fire department sirens and other vehicles' horns, may not be audible and may cause accidents. ◁

Declarations of conformity

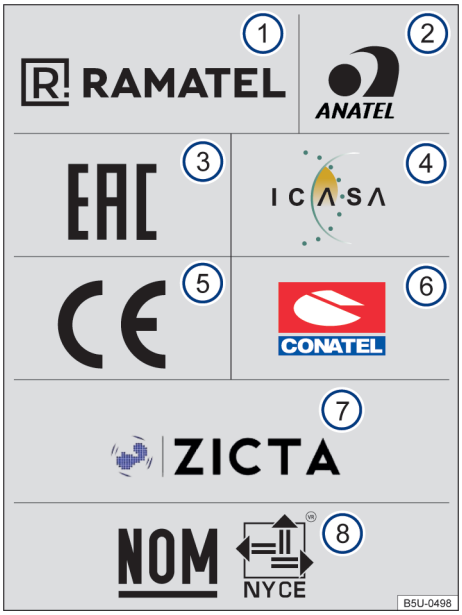


Fig. 176 Some approval identifications.

Approval identifications → Fig. 176:

1. Argentina.
2. Brazil.
3. Russia and countries that authorize and allow radio transmission systems as per EAC guidelines.
4. South Africa.
5. Europe and countries that authorize and allow radio transmission systems as per European guidelines.
6. Paraguay.
7. Zambia.
8. Mexico. ▶

The individual manufacturer declares herewith that the following products comply with essential requirements of each country, among other relevant provisions and laws at the time of vehicle manufacturing:

Radiofrequency equipment

– Electronic immobilizer.
– Radios with Bluetooth connection.

South Africa

The Composition Touch 2 radio is approved by ICASA (Independent Communications Authority of South Africa) under identification number TA-2023/2656.

Argentina

The following equipment is approved by the Ramatel under the identification number:

Immobilizer

– H-23800
– H-29581
– H-29582

Composition Touch 2 Radio

– H-30236

Bahamas

The Immobilizer is approved under identification number URCA_TA_2023_212.

Bolivia

The Immobilizer is approved under identification number ATT-DJ-RA-H-TL LP_648_2023.

Brazil

Devices activated by radiofrequency comply with all applicable approval and use standards, and their use in vehicles was authorized by the Brazilian National Telecommunications Agency (ANATEL).

Such approval must be used to obtain use licenses in other countries.

Honduras

The Immobilizer is approved under identification number 4190/ 2023.

Mexico

The Immobilizer is approved by the NOM (Norma Oficial Mexicana) under identification number IFT VOCO2323-32951.

Paraguay

The Immobilizer is approved under identification number 2023-10-I-0757.

Zambia

The Composition Touch 2 radio is approved by ZICTA (Autoridade de Tecnologia da Informação e Comunicação da Zâmbia) under identification number ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2023/11/23.

This equipment is not entitled to protection against prejudicial interference and do not cause interference in duly authorized systems. ◁

License to use the remote control key

The remote control key, activated via radiofrequency, complies with all Brazilian approval and use criteria.

Such approval must be used to obtain use licenses in other countries. ◁

License to use the electronic immobilizer

The electronic immobilizer, activated via radiofrequency, complies with all Brazilian approval and use criteria.

Such approval must be used to obtain use licenses in other countries. ◁

Technical data

Guidelines on the technical data

Introduction

To check which engine a vehicle is equipped with, refer to the vehicle data sticker and vehicle license documents.

All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over this data. All data in this manual are valid for the basic model. The figures may be different if additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

Engine

On the vehicle data sticker or in the vehicle documents it can be seen with which engine the vehicle is equipped.

Performance figures

All values apply to the basic model. Values may vary according to the quality of local fuel, vehicle equipment, load, tyre pressure, temperature, altitude and driving behaviour.

Range

All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over this data. All data in this manual are valid for the basic model. The vehicle data sticker and official vehicle documents indicate the vehicle's engine.

The values quoted here may differ if additional equipment is fitted, for different models or for special vehicles.

The values for the kerb weight in the following table apply for the road-ready vehicle with service fluids, including fuel tank carrying 90% of total capacity and tools and spare tyre, if applicable → ⚠. The indicated gear order weight is increased due to optional equipment and additional accessories installed, which proportionally reduces the maximum permitted load.

The load includes the following weights:

– Driver and passengers.
– Luggage.
– Roof load, including the roof luggage carrier system.
– Trailer towing support load.

Gross combination weight

The listed admissible traction ratings are only applicable for altitudes of up to 1,000 m above sea level. The maximum weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by approximately 10% for every further 1,000 m in altitude.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring or exceeding specific values and limits regarding weights, payloads, vehicle dimensions, and speed limit could result in severe accidents and injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the permitted gross weight and axle weights may damage the vehicle and cause severe accidents and injuries.

- Actual axle loads must never exceed permitted axle loads.
- The payload and distribution of the load in the vehicle affect driving response and braking distance. Adjust your speed accordingly.
- Observing maximum weight and axle load limits is essential to ensure the safety of the driver, passengers and other road users.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and severe injuries can occur if the maximum trailer weight is exceeded.

- Never exceed the specified maximum trailer weight.

NOTICE

The payload should be distributed as evenly as possible in the vehicle. When transporting heavy objects in the luggage compartment, they should be placed either in front of or over the rear axle in order to minimise the effect on the vehicle's handling. ◁

Information on fuel consumption

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 213.

The figures quoted for fuel consumption and emissions do not refer to any one individual vehicle. Their purpose is to enable comparisons to be made between various vehicle types. Fuel consumption does not depend exclusively on the efficiency of the vehicle, but also on the way it is driven and other non-technical factors.

Measuring fuel consumption

The vehicle consumption and emissions values were determined according to directive UE 70/220/EEC in the currently valid version and apply for the given vehicle kerb weight. The figures **do not** refer to any one individual vehicle. Two measuring cycles are carried out on a rolling road test bed to calculate fuel consumption. The test criteria are as follows:

Urban cycle The urban cycle starts with an engine cold start. Thereafter city driving at speeds between 0 and 50 km/h (0 and 31 mph) is simulated.

Extra-urban cycle In the extra-urban cycle the car undergoes frequent acceleration and braking in all gears, as in normal everyday driving. In this case the driving speed ranges from 0 to 120 km/h (0 to 75 mph).

Combined cycle The combined consumption is calculated with a weighting of around 37% for the urban cycle and 63% for the extra-urban cycle.

Kerb weight may vary according to the respective version. This may slightly increase fuel consumption figures.

In practical terms, fuel consumption figures may differ from those measured based on the UE 70/220/EEC guidelines. ◁

Vehicle identification data

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 213.

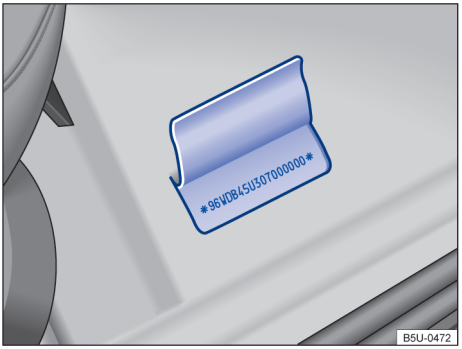


Fig. 177 In front of the front passenger seat: vehicle identification number (chassis number) on the floor, in front of the passenger seat.

Vehicle identification number (VIN - chassis number)

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is located on the floor, in front of the front passenger seat → Fig. 177.

Partial vehicle identification number (VIS – partial chassis number)

The plates (VIS) are located on the lower area of the front right door pillar and in the engine compartment on the driver side, in the suspension strut. These plates are destroyed when removed.

Additionally, the VIS number is also available in the windscreen, rear window, and side windows.

Engine identification number

The engine identification number is located on the engine block. Open the bonnet to access the manufacturer identification sticker ⚠ → page 154.

In some regions, the engine identification number is included in the official vehicle document.

Manufacturer identification sticker

The manufacturer identification sticker is located in the front cross strut in the engine compartment. Open the bonnet to access the manufacturer identification sticker ⚠ → page 154. ▶

Manufacturing year identification plate

The manufacturing year identification plate is located on the lower area of the front right door. This plate is destroyed when removed.

Maximum cargo capacity identification label

The label containing empty vehicle weight, passenger capacity, total gross weight, and maximum traction capacity is located on the driver door column.

NOTICE

In case it is necessary to replace stickers or re-engrave vehicle components, contact a local Volkswagen Dealership.

NOTICE

The plastic layer applied over the vehicle identification number (chassis number) engraving is an anti-corrosive protection that prevents transferring the number into a paper sheet. Therefore, it must not be removed under any circumstances - risk of voiding warranty against perforation due to corrosion!

Information on the air conditioning system

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 213.

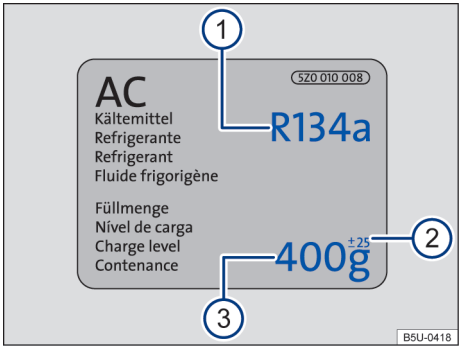


Fig. 178 Information on the air conditioning.

Key for→ Fig. 178:

① Air conditioner coolant specification.

② Air conditioner load level tolerance.

③ Air conditioner load level

Dimensions

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 213.

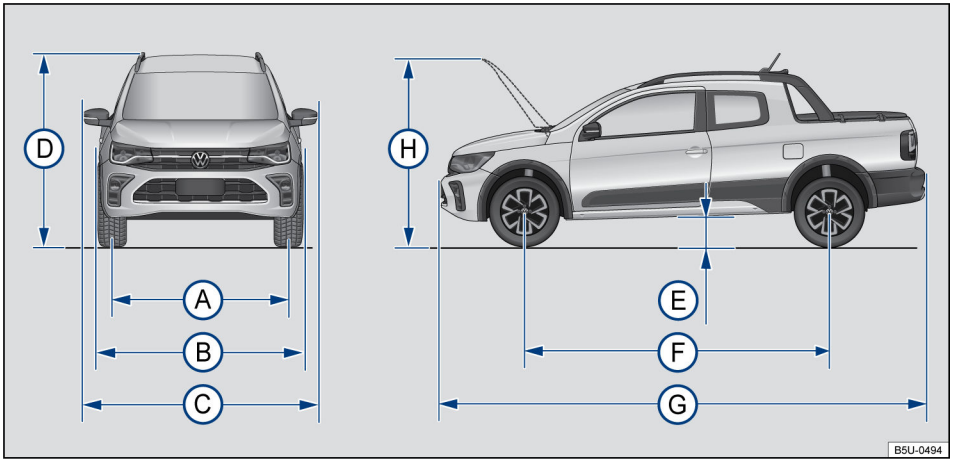


Fig. 179 Dimensions.

Table indications apply for the basic model with basic equipment.

Indicated values may vary due to wheel and tyre sizes, optional equipment, different model versions, or different accessory installations.

Key for→ Fig. 179:		Single cab	Extended Cab	Double cab - Extreme version
Ⓐ	Front track[a)]	1,431 mm		
	Rear track[a)]	1,493 mm	1,494 mm	1,494 mm
Ⓑ	Vehicle width *(not including exterior mirrors)*	1,721 mm		
Ⓒ	Vehicle width *(including exterior mirrors)*	1,898 mm		
Ⓓ	Vehicle level (ground to roof)[b)]	1,520 mm	1,561 mm	1,560 mm
Ⓔ	Height of the free gap between the vehicle and the ground[b)]	196 mm		195 mm
Ⓕ	Clearance between axles	2,752 mm		
Ⓖ	Vehicle length	4,493 mm		
Ⓗ	Height with the bonnet open[b)]	1,769 mm	1,769 mm	
–	Minimum vehicle rotation diameter	approximately 12.3 m		

a) Data may vary according to wheel and tyre sizes.

b) Weight in gear order, without driver and cargo.

Tailgate dimensions			
	Single cab	Extended Cab	Double cab - Extreme version
Useful floor length	1,655 mm	1,106 mm	1,106 mm
Useful top edge length	1,594 mm	1,017 mm	1,017 mm
Maximum floor width	1,237 mm	1,200 mm	1,200 mm
Width between wheel boxes	1,006 mm	1,005 mm	1,005 mm
Luggage compartment height in the centre of the wheel	519 mm	519 mm	519 mm

NOTICE

- Drive carefully in parking lots with long kerbs or fixed posts. Objects higher than the ground level may damage the bumper and other vehicle parts when parking.
- Carefully drive through terrain entrances, ramps, kerbs, and other objects. Lowered vehicle parts, such as the bumper, spoiler and chassis, engine or exhaust parts may be damaged in these situations. ◁

Petrol engine

1.6 - 81 kW petrol

	Single cab	Extended Cab	Double cab - Extreme version
Engine power	81 kW (110 hp) at 5,750 rpm		
Maximum torque	155 Nm (15.8 kgfm) at 4.000 rpm		
EC	CWSA		
Cylinders, Displacement	4 cylinders, 1,598 cm^3		
Compression ratio	10,5:1		
Spark plugs	04C 905 616[a)]		
Unleaded petrol free from other metallic additives (such as manganese)	*Valid only for Argentina* Grade 2 or Superior min. 91 ON		
	Super i.o. 95 Normal ON 91[b)]		
Gearbox type	5-gear manual gearbox (MQ 200)		
Maximum speed[c)]	176 km/h	174 km/h	174 km/h
Acceleration 0 - 80 km/h[c)]	6.6 s	6.7 s	6.8 s
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h[c)]	10.2 s	10.4 s	10.5 s
Kerb weight[d)]	1,073 kg	1,109 kg	1,118 kg
Gross axle weight permitted (GWP)	1,740 kg		
Useful load	667 kg	631 kg	622 kg
Gross axle weight permitted in the front axle	840 kg		
Gross axle weight permitted in the rear axle	900 kg		
Roof load permitted	45 kg		
Trailer with brake, gradients up to 8%	400 kg		
Trailer without brake, gradients up to 8%	400 kg		
Gross combination weight (CMT[e)])	2,140 kg		

25C.5L1.SAV.20

Valid only for Argentina Fuel consumption[f] - Combined Euro 5 and Euro 4 legislation	7.57 l/100 km
Valid only for Argentina CO_2 emissions	176 g/km

a) Volkswagen part number. Use only spark plugs recommended by Volkswagen in your vehicle, in order to prevent damages to the engine and ensure compliance with applicable emissions laws.

b) With slight reduction in performance and increase in fuel consumption, with graded increase in engine noise until detonation regulation intervention.

c) Figures are related to the basic model. Data may vary according to the local fuel used, optional devices equipped in the vehicle, load, tyre pressure, temperature, altitude, vehicle route and driving habits.

d) Weight for basic model without optional equipment.

e) CMT = vehicle gross combination weight + maximum trailer weight.

f) For reasons of vehicle registration and taxation, the fuel consumption of some engines may differ from the following indications in other countries.

TOTALFLEX engines

1.6 TOTALFLEX 78/85 kW engine

		Petrol	Ethanol
Engine power		78 kW (106 hp) at 5,750 rpm	85 kW (116 hp) at 5,750 rpm
Maximum torque		151 Nm (15.4 kgfm) at 4.000 rpm	158 Nm (16.1 kgfm) at 4.000 rpm
EC		CNXD	
Cylinders, Displacement		4 cylinders, 1,598 cm^3	
Compression ratio		11,5:1	
Spark plugs		101 905 610.C [a]	
Gearbox type		5-gear manual gearbox (MQ 200)	
Engine oil specifications		as per the **VW 508 88** standard	
Maximum speed [b]	**Single cab**	176 km/h	181 km/h
	Extended Cab	175 km/h	179 km/h
Acceleration 0 - 80 km/h [b]	**Single cab**	6.8 s	6.6 s
	Extended Cab	7 s	6.7 s
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h [b]	**Single cab**	10.4 s	9.9 s
	Extended Cab	10.6 s	10.1 s
Kerb weight [c]	**Single cab**	1,076 kg	
	Extended Cab	1,102 kg	
Gross axle weight permitted (GWP)		1,740 kg	
Useful load	**Single cab**	664 kg	
	Extended Cab	638 kg	
Gross axle weight permitted in the front axle		840 kg	
Gross axle weight permitted in the rear axle		900 kg	

Roof load permitted	45 kg
Trailer with brake, gradients up to 8%	400 kg
Trailer without brake, gradients up to 8%	400 kg
Gross combination weight (CMT[d])	2,140 kg
Rotation at idling speed [e]	840 +/- 50 rpm
CO emission at idle[e]	< 0.2% (max)

a) Volkswagen part number. Use only spark plugs recommended by Volkswagen in your vehicle, in order to prevent damages to the engine and ensure compliance with applicable emissions laws.

b) Figures are related to the basic model. Data may vary according to the local fuel used, optional devices equipped in the vehicle, load, tyre pressure, temperature, altitude, vehicle route and driving habits.

c) Weight for basic model without optional equipment.

d) CMT = vehicle gross combination weight + maximum trailer weight.

e) This vehicle complies with the Environment preservation program for motor vehicles (PROCONVE).

1.6 TOTALFLEX 78/85 kW engine - Extreme version

Double cab - Extreme version	Petrol	Ethanol
Engine power	78 kW (106 hp) at 5,750 rpm	85 kW (116 hp) at 5,750 rpm
Maximum torque	151 Nm (15.4 kgfm) at 4.000 rpm	158 Nm (16.1 kgfm) at 4.000 rpm
EC	CNXD	
Cylinders, Displacement	4 cylinders, 1,598 cm^3	
Compression ratio	11,5:1	
Spark plugs	04C 905 607[a]	
Gearbox type	5-gear manual gearbox (MQ 200)	
Engine oil specifications	as per the **VW 508 88** standard	
Maximum speed[b]	174 km/h	178 km/h
Acceleration 0 - 80 km/h [b]	7 s	6.7 s
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h [b]	10.8 s	10.2 s
Kerb weight [c]	1,135 kg	
Gross axle weight permitted (GWP)	1,740 kg	
Useful load	605 kg	
Gross axle weight permitted in the front axle	840 kg	
Gross axle weight permitted in the rear axle	900 kg	
Roof load permitted	45 kg	
Trailer with brake, gradients up to 8%	400 kg	
Trailer without brake, gradients up to 8%	400 kg	
Gross combination weight (CMT[d])	2,140 kg	

Rotation at idling speed [e)]	840 +/- 50 rpm
CO emission at idle[e)]	< 0.2% (max)

a) Volkswagen part number. Use only spark plugs recommended by Volkswagen in your vehicle, in order to prevent damages to the engine and ensure compliance with applicable emissions laws.

b) Figures are related to the basic model. Data may vary according to the local fuel used, optional devices equipped in the vehicle, load, tyre pressure, temperature, altitude, vehicle route and driving habits.

c) Weight for basic model without optional equipment.

d) CMT = vehicle gross combination weight + maximum trailer weight.

e) This vehicle complies with the Environment preservation program for motor vehicles (PROCONVE). ◁

Capacities

Capacities			
Items	**Petrol engines**		**TOTALFLEX Engine**
	1.6 with 81 kW		**1.6 of 78/85 kW**
	Single cab and double cab	**Extended Cab - Cross version**	**Single cab, double cab and double cab - Cross version**
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir (→ page 158)	2.4 litres		
Fuel tank (→ page 132)	approximately 55 litres, of which approximately 8 litres reserve[a)]		
Engine oil capacity (→ page 159)	4.5 litres		

a) The reserve will be activated when the total tank level is reduced to approximately 8 litres of fuel. ◁

Luggage compartment capacities

Luggage compartment capacity		
Version	Measured volume[a)]	Maximum theoretical volume[b)]
Single cab	924 litres	1,027 litres
Extended cab	580 litres	645 litres

a) Measurement carried out with standardized blocks according to ABNT NBR ISO 3832.

b) Theoretical measurement of the total volume of the load compartment. ◁

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
A	Amp; electrical current measurement unit.
A/h	Ampere-hour.
A2DP	Audio transmission technology via Bluetooth® common in many manufacturers (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile).
ABNT	Brazilian Association of Technical Standards.
ABS	Anti-lock brake system.
AM	Amplitude modulation (medium wave, MW).
ANATEL	Brazilian Telecommunications Agency.
AVRCP	Audio source remote control technology via Bluetooth® common in many manufacturers (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
bar	Bar, unit adopted to measure pressure.
BAS	Brake assist
BCM	Body Control Module.
BFM	Basic Function Module.
BT-Audio	See A2DP or AVRCP.
CD	Compact Disk (CD) is an optical memory unit used to store digital music.
CDM	Engine code.
cm^3	Cubic centimetres. Unit of displacement.
CO	Carbon monoxide.
CONTRAN	National Traffic Council
dB (A)	Decibel, unit adopted to measure sound.
DIN	German Institute for Standardisation.
E-FLEX	Warm starting system.
EBV	Electronic brake variator.
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe-Regelung.
EDS	Electronic differential lock.
EPC	Engine management system (Electronic Power Control).
ESC	Electronic stability control.
ESS	Emergency brake lights (Emergency Stop Signal).
FM	Frequency modulation (ultra short wave, UKW)
GALA	Adjustment of the volume in relation to the vehicle's speed.
GRA	Cruise control system.
HDC	Hill Descent Control.
HFP	Hands-Free-Profile.
hp	Horsepower, engine power.
INMETRO	National Institute of Metrology, Standardization and Industrial Quality.
kg	Kilogram, mass unit of the International System of Units.
kPa	Kilopascal, standard pressure and tension unit of the International System of Units.

Abbreviation	Definition
kW	Kilowatt, engine power.
l	Litre, capacity unit of the metric system.
LED	Light Emitting Diode.
m	Metre, length measurement unit of the International System of Units.
mm	Millimetre, length unit equal to one thousandth of a metre.
MP3	Audio file compression format.
MQ 200	5-speed manual transmission.
NBR	Brazilian Standard.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
º C	Celsius Degrees; temperature measurement unit.
PDC	Park Distance Control.
PIN	Personal identification number.
PROCONVE	Vehicular emission control program.
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute.
s	Seconds, basic time measurement unit of the International System of Units.
TCS	Traction control system.
TWI	Trade Wear Indicator.
UKW	Ultra-short wave (USW), frequency modulation.
USB	Universal Serial Bus
V	Volts, electrical difference of potential measurement unit.
VIN	Chassis number (Vehicle Identification Number).
VIS	Partial vehicle identification number with the last 8 digits of the running gear (Vehicle Indicator Section).
W	Watts, mechanical or electrical, thermal flow and energy flow of radiation measurement unit.
WMA	Audio file compression format.

Index

Numbers and Symbols

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

S

T

U

V

W

Volkswagen Brazil works continuously to develop and improve all its vehicles. Please understand that we must therefore reserve the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. The data provided concerning scope of delivery, appearance, performance, dimensions, weights, fuel consumption, standards and vehicle functions are all correct at the time of going to print. Some of the equipment described might not yet be available in a particular vehicle (information can be provided by your local Volkswagen Dealership), and some equipment may not be available in certain countries. No legal commitment may be inferred from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

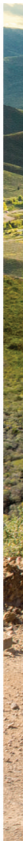
No part of this manual may be entirely or partially reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen do Brasil.

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen do Brasil. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Brazil.

© 2024 Volkswagen do Brasil

Manual printed in paper bleached without the use of chlorine.



Owner's Manual:
Saveiro
Stand: 22.02.2024 | PAN - XXXXXX
Englisch: 04.2024
Artikel-Nr.: 25C.5L1.SAV.20